Star points on cubic surfaces

(met een samenvatting het Nederlands)

PROEFSCHRIFT

TER VERKRIJGING VAN DE GRAAD VAN DOCTOR AAN DE UNIVERSITEIT UTRECHT OP GEZAG VAN DE RECTOR MAGNIFICUS, PROF. DR. H. O. VOORMA, INGEVOLGE HET BESLUIT VAN HET COLLEGE VAN PROMOTIES IN HET OPENBAAR TE VERDEDIGEN OP WOENSDAG 29 NOVEMBER DES NAMIDDAGS TE 12.45 UUR

DOOR

Tu Chanh Nguyen

geboren op 23 januari 1965 te Da Nang.
Promotor: Prof. Dr. F. Oort,
Universiteit Utrecht, Nederland
Star points on cubic surfaces
(with a summary in Dutch)

THESIS

to obtain the degree of Doctor at Utrecht University, The Netherlands, on the authority of the Rector Magnificus, Prof. Dr. H. O. Voorma, to be defended in public on Wednesday, 29 November 2000, at 12:45 in the afternoon

by

Tu Chanh Nguyen

born on 23 January 1965 in Da Nang.
2000 Mathematics Subject Classification: 14D20, 14D22, 14D25, 14J10, 14J17, 14J25, 14L24, 14L30

Nguyen Chanh Tu, 1965 -
Star points on cubic surfaces (with a summary in Dutch)
Doctoral Thesis, Utrecht University, The Netherlands

ISBN 90-393-2575-8

Typeset by Latex, printed on recycled paper.
To My Mother, Wife and Son
Acknowledgments

In the period from 1996 to 2000, I spent part of my time in Utrecht and spent part of my time in Hue. I had a nice Ph.D. program in which I could stay in Utrecht for several months per year on the one hand, and I could be close to my home and finish my teaching duty at Hue University on the other hand. Above all, I would like to pay tribute to the Mathematical Research Institute (MRI) of The Netherlands, the Department of Mathematics, the International Relations Office, Utrecht University for financial support, for excellent facilities, and for marvellous hospitality, which laid the foundation for my Ph. D. research.

I am greatly indebted to my Supervisor, Prof. Dr. F. Oort for his idea to organize this helpful program for me, for drawing my attention to this beautiful subject, for his supervision and careful guidance, for many fruitful discussions and for his endless support inside and outside mathematics. Many arguments in this thesis are extracted from his suggestions.

I would like to express my gratitude to:

- the Ministry of Education and Training of Vietnam, and Hue University for allowing me to follow this Ph. D. program.

- my professors in the MRI for their excellent lectures in the Master Class in Arithmetic and Algebraic Geometry (1994/95) from which I have learnt a lot;

- my professors in Hanoi Mathematical Institute: Prof. H. H. Khoai, Prof. N. V. Trung, Prof. N. T. Cuong, and professors in Dalat University: Prof. N. H. Duc, Prof. T. L. Loi for many helpful discussions and for organizing the seminars in which I have participated;

- my teachers and colleagues in the Department of Mathematics at Hue University of Education for taking care of some of my teaching duties during my stay at Utrecht University as a Ph. D. student.

During the time I studied in Utrecht, I had many useful mathematics conversations with my friends: Tim Dokchitser, Fabrizio Andreatta and with many researchers in the Department of Mathematics; many of their comments and suggestions are incorporated in this thesis. I will never forget sweet spiritual support from my Vietnamese friends in The Netherlands and in Hue as well. Many thanks are due to them.

Last but not least, I am most grateful to my wife for her love and patience, to my son for being my son and to all of my family members for their constant support and encouragement.

Utrecht, November 2000
# Contents

0 INTRODUCTION .......................................................... 1
  0.1 Some historical remarks .......................................... 1
  0.2 Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points .................. 2
  0.3 Moduli space of non-singular cubic surfaces and a compactification ... 2
  0.4 Singular cubic surfaces ........................................... 3
  0.5 Blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at 6 points ............................. 3
  0.6 Specialization ...................................................... 5
  0.7 Results in this thesis .............................................. 6

1 Preliminaries ............................................................ 9
  1.1 General position .................................................. 9
  1.2 The space of lines in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) .................................. 9
  1.3 The space of cubic surfaces in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) ......................... 10
  1.4 Algebraic groups and actions of algebraic groups on varieties .... 11

2 Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points ....................... 13
  2.1 Star points. Star triples. Star-Steiner sets ..................... 13
  2.2 A study of \( H_1 \) ................................................ 17
  2.3 A study of \( H_2 \) and \( H_3 \) .................................... 20
  2.4 A study of \( H_4 \) ................................................ 24
  2.5 A study of \( H_5 \) and \( H_6 \) .................................... 32
  2.6 A study of \( H_7, H_8 \) and \( H_9 \) ................................. 32
  2.7 A study of \( H_k \) with \( k \geq 10 \) ................................. 39

3 On the moduli spaces of non-singular cubic surfaces with star points and compactifications .............................................. 43
  3.1 Cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities ................... 43
  3.2 Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces ............................. 50
    A. Linear actions of reductive groups on projective varieties. ... 50
    B. The action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) ..................... 53
    C. Semi-stable and stable cubic surfaces. .......................... 55
  3.3 The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position .......... 59
    A. 6-point schemes and 6-point schemes in almost general position. 59
    B. Csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position. ..... 60
    C. Multiplicity of a line on a semi-stable cubic surface. Triple intersection and multiplicity. 65

vii
3.4 On the boundaries of the moduli spaces of non-singular cubic surfaces
   with star points ........................................... 82
   A. Some basic facts ........................................ 83
   B. On the boundaries ....................................... 85

Bibliography ................................................. 101

Samenvatting ................................................ 105

Curriculum Vitae ............................................ 107
Chapter 0

INTRODUCTION

0.1 Some historical remarks

Cubic surfaces have been studied since the last century, initially by G. Salmon [Sa] and A. Cayley [C1] in 1848. Since then, the theory of twenty-seven lines on a non-singular cubic surface fascinated many mathematicians. There were a lot of papers and books devoted to this beautiful object. Besides the results by G. Salmon and A. Cayley, the following publications were influential: J. Steiner [St], L. Cremona [Cr], R. Sturm with a purely geometric theory of cubic surfaces; L. Schläfi [Sch1, Sch2] with results on the classification of cubic surfaces and the structure of the configuration of twenty-seven lines; C. Wiener, Clebsch, F. Klein [K], Rodenberg and W. H. Blythe [Bl1, Bl2] with the construction of models of cubic surfaces; C. F. Geiser [Gei], H. G. Zeuthen [Ze], H. F. Baker [Ba] studied the relation between twenty-seven lines of a cubic surface and twenty-eight bitangents of a plane quartic curve; C. Jordan, Maschke, Burkhardt, Witting, Dickson, Kühnen, Weber, Kasner with results on the twenty-seven lines from a group theoretic point of view and the Galois group of the equation of the twenty-seven lines. In his book published in 1911, “The Twenty-Seven Lines upon the Cubic Surface” [He], A. Henderson gave a clear historical summary on the research of the subject in the last century and a lot of references. We quote the first sentences in the historical summary of the book:

“While it is doubtless true that the classification of cubic surfaces is complete, the number of papers dealing with these surfaces which continue to appear from year to year furnish abundant proof of the fact that they still possess much the same fascination as they did in the days of the discovery of the twenty-seven lines upon the cubic surface. The literature of the subject is very extensive. In a bibliography on curves and surfaces compiled by J. E. Hill, of Columbia University, New York, the section on cubic surfaces contained two hundred and five titles. The Royal Society of London Catalogue of Scientific Papers, 1800-1900, volume for Pure Mathematics (1908), contains very many more.”

These results turned out to be useful in research of many mathematicians. Modern algebraic geometry and other related branches of mathematics introduced powerful tools which were used to study cubic surfaces. The theory of cubic surfaces with a specific configuration of lines is still an fascinating topic. There are more papers and
books dealing with cubic surfaces and related topics. Among them, we mention: B. Serge [S1,S2], Yu. I. Manin [Ma1, Ma2, Ma3, Ma4], F. Bardelli and A. Del Centina [Bar], [B-D]; J. Sekiguchi [Se1, Se2], I. Naruki [Na], [Na-Se], J. W. Bruce and C. T. C. Wall [B-W], A. Geramita [Ge], M. Brundu and A. Logar [B-L], B. Hassett, B. Hunt [Hu1, Hu2].

0.2 Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

A cubic surface in $\mathbb{P}^3$ is given by a non-zero cubic homogeneous polynomial in 4 variables. Fixing an ordering of monomials of degree 3 in the polynomial ring $k[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3]$, each cubic surface defines a point in $\mathbb{P}^9$. A non-singular cubic surface $X$ contains twenty-seven lines. There exist at most 3 lines among these twenty-seven lines through a given point of $X$. A star point (also called Eckardt point) on a non-singular cubic surface is the intersection point of three lines on the surface. Not every non-singular cubic surface has a star point. In fact, the subset of $\mathbb{P}^9$ corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least one star point is a locally closed subvariety of codimension 1. A non-singular cubic surface does not have more than 18 star points. This was proved by Serge [S1] in 1946. We give another proof in Chapter 2. In 1876, F. E. Eckardt considered non-singular cubic surfaces possessing star points [Ec] (see also [S1], p. 147). In his book [S1], B. Serge classified non-singular cubic surfaces possessing star points. He proved a criterion stating that a non-singular cubic surface has as many Eckardt points as it has harmonic homologies into itself. A harmonic homology of the central point $P$ and the fundamental plane $H$ is a projective transformation of $\mathbb{P}^3$ which maps a point $Q$ into its harmonic conjugate $Q' \in \overline{PQ}$ with respect to $P$ and the intersection point $\overline{PQ} \cap H$ ([S1], §98). Using this criterion, he determined all classes of non-singular cubic surfaces with respect to possible numbers of star points ([S1], p. 154) by considering polynomials defining surfaces and determining the number of harmonic homologies.

In this Ph.D. thesis, we denote by $H_k$ the subset of $\mathbb{P}^9$ consisting of points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least $k$ star points. We study these $H_k$ as subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}^9$ and their images in a compactification of the moduli space $M$ of non-singular cubic surfaces. In the next section, we describe a construction of one compactification $\overline{M}$ of the moduli space of non-singular cubic surfaces. We obtain a morphism $\phi : \mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta \rightarrow M$, where $\Delta$ is the locus of singular cubic surfaces. We consider the irreducibility, the local closedness and the dimension of $H_k$ inside $\mathbb{P}^9$. Especially, we are interested in studying boundaries of $\phi(H_k)$ in the compactification $\overline{M}$.

0.3 Moduli space of non-singular cubic surfaces and a compactification

We construct the coarse moduli space $M$ of non-singular cubic surfaces and its compactification as well, in which we describe the subspaces $\phi(H_k)$ and we study their boundaries. Moduli theory is an area of algebraic geometry. The goal of moduli theory is to classify certain objects by constructing spaces which parametrize isomorphism classes of such geometric objects. This if often achieved by invariant theory, in con-
0.4. Singular cubic surfaces

Structuring a quotient of a parameter space with respect to an equivalence relation (given by declaring isomorphic objects to be represented by equivalent points). The fine moduli space of marked non-singular cubic surfaces has been constructed by I. Naruki [N] and its closure is known as the “Cross ratio variety”. He also constructed a space which is isomorphic to the Mumford compactification of the coarse moduli space of non-singular cubic surfaces. Another approach to construct coarse moduli spaces is via geometric invariant theory. We describe this approach in order to construct $M$ and its compactification.

We have a natural action of the group variety $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^9$. This action is good enough in the sense that the quotient spaces of semi-stable points and of stable points do exist (Chapter 3, Section 2). Moreover, the quotient space $\overline{M} := \text{PGL}(3) \backslash \left( \mathbb{P}^9 \right)^{ss}$ of semi-stable points is projective; the image of the subset of $\mathbb{P}^9$ corresponding to all non-singular cubic surfaces is affine and it is a coarse moduli space. We have $\text{PGL}(3) \backslash \left( \mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta \right) = M \subset \overline{M}$. Hence, the space $\overline{M}$ is a compactification of the coarse moduli space $M$.

0.4 Singular cubic surfaces

The locus $\Delta \subset \mathbb{P}^9$ of singular cubic surfaces is a closed subset of codimension 1. Some classifications of non-singular cubic surfaces can be found in [B-W] or [B-L]. We are interested in singular cubic surfaces which correspond to semi-stable and stable points under the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^9$ in the sense of geometric invariant theory. A cubic surface with only isolated singularities has at most 4 singular points.

In this thesis, we consider singular cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities. A point $P$ on a cubic surface $X$ with only isolated singularities is called a singular point of type $A_1$ if the tangent cone at $P$ is an irreducible quadric surface. The subset of stable points consists of the points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces and singular cubic surfaces with only $A_1$ singularities. The subset of $\mathbb{P}^9$ corresponding to singular cubic surfaces with only $A_1$ singularities is locally closed of codimension 1. A point $P$ on a cubic surface $X$ with only isolated singularities is called a singular point of type $A_2$ if the tangent cone at $P$ consists of two distinct planes whose intersection line does not lie on $X$. The subset of semi-stable points consists of the points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces and singular cubic surfaces with $A_1$ or $A_2$ singularities. We denote by $iA_1, jA_2$ the subset of $\Delta$ consisting of the points corresponding to the cubic surfaces with exactly $i$ singular points of type $A_1$ and $j$ singular points of type $A_2$; we have $2i + 3j \leq 9$, $i \leq 4$ and $(i, j) \neq (3, 1)$. We use $jA_2$ and $iA_1$ instead of $0A_1, jA_2$ and $iA_1, 0A_2$ respectively. In the quotient space $\overline{M} := \text{PGL}(3) \backslash \left( \mathbb{P}^9 \right)^{ss}$, the image of all semi-stable but non-stable points is just one point. We will give a proof for this fact in Chapter 3, Section 4.

0.5 Blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at 6 points

One of the main methods used to study cubic surfaces (at least for the case of semi-stable ones) in this thesis is the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at 6 points. We say that 6 distinct points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ are in general position if no three are collinear and all six points
do not lie on a conic. A set of 6 points in general position determines an element (called a 6-point scheme) in the Hilbert scheme of zero-dimensional closed subschemes of length 6 in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \). Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a 6-point scheme consisting of 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) in general position. Let \( Y \) be the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \). We see that the linear space \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) of cubic forms in four variables which are zero at \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) has linear dimension 4. Let \( \{f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4\} \) be a basis of \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \). Consider the rational map

\[
\mathbb{P}^2 \dashrightarrow \mathbb{P}^3
\]

\[
P \mapsto (f_1(P) : f_2(P) : f_3(P) : f_4(P)).
\]

Let \( X \) be the closure of the image of \( \psi \). Then \( X \) is a non-singular cubic surface. Moreover, we have an isomorphism \( Y \xrightarrow{\sim} X \). The twenty-seven lines of \( X \) are the following:

- six exceptional curves \( \tilde{P}_i \) corresponding to \( P_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \),
- six strict transforms \( \tilde{C}_i \) of the conics \( C_i \) through \( \{P_1, \ldots, P_6\} \setminus \{P_i\} \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \),
- fifteen strict transforms \( \tilde{l}_{ij} \) of the lines \( l_{ij} = \overline{P_i P_j} \) for \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 6 \).

Conversely, let \( X \) be any non-singular cubic surface. For any choice of 6 mutually skew lines \( L_1, \ldots, L_6 \subset X \), there exist \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \in \mathbb{P}^2 \) in general position such that the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at these points gives a surface isomorphism with \( X \) and \( \tilde{P}_i = L_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \). There are 51840 of such choices. Star points on a non-singular cubic surface can be recognized by the configuration of these 6 points.

**Example 1.** Let \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) be 6 points of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) in general position such that \( \overline{P_1 P_2} \cap \overline{P_3 P_4} \cap \overline{P_5 P_6} = \{O\} \), see Figure 0.1, (a). Then the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) has at least one star point, which is the image of the point \( O \).

![Figure 0.1: Configurations show the only ways of getting a star point](image)

**Example 2.** Another configuration of 6 points which gives a star point on the corresponding cubic surface is as follows. Let \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) be 6 points of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) in general position such that the line \( \overline{P_1 P_2} \) is tangent to the conic \( C_1 \) containing the 5 points \( P_2, \ldots, P_5 \) at \( P_2 \). Then the star point is the intersection point of the lines \( \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{C}_1 \) and \( \tilde{l}_{12} \), see Figure 0.1, (b).
0.6. Specialization

In fact, any star point on a given non-singular cubic surface is recognized by the above two configurations when viewing the cubic surface by the blowing-up process.

We can determine all configurations of 6 points in $\mathbb{P}^2$ corresponding to the types of non-singular cubic surfaces with a given number of star points.

A question arises naturally: is there a similar correspondence between a singular, semi-stable cubic surface and a 6-point scheme in some relevant configuration of its points? In this thesis, we show such a correspondence. Namely, let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. Then there exists a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that the linear system $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ of cubic forms in four variables through $\mathcal{P}$ has dimension 4; furthermore, for any basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$, the closure of the image of the rational map from $\mathbb{P}^2$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ defined by the basis is isomorphic to $X$. In this case, we have a morphism $Y \longrightarrow X$, where $Y$ is the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at $\mathcal{P}$. In general, this is a blowing-down which is not an isomorphism. A close study of such 6-point schemes enable us to determine the number of lines, the number of singularities of $X$ and their configuration as well.

For example, let $\mathcal{P}_1$ be a 6-point scheme consisting of 6 mutually different points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ lying on an irreducible conic. Then the corresponding cubic surface is singular with exactly one $A_1$ singularity. The image (via any rational map defined by a choice of basis of $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}_1}$) of the irreducible conic is the singular point. Let $\mathcal{P}_2$ be another 6-point scheme consisting of 6 mutually different points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ such that no four points lie on a line, three points $P_1, P_2, P_3$ as well as three points $P_4, P_5, P_6$ are collinear. Then the corresponding cubic surface $X$ is singular with exactly one $A_2$ singularity. The image of $\overline{P_1P_2 \cup P_4P_5}$ is the singular point of $X$.

0.6 Specialization

We see that the correspondence between semi-stable cubic surfaces and certain 6-point schemes gives us a way to study the subsets $H_k$ as well as $iA_j,jA_2$ for $2i+3j \leq 9$, $i \leq 4$ and $(i,j) \neq (3,1)$. In this way, we can find all irreducible components of the subsets $H_k$ and we can determine the inclusion relationship between these irreducible components. Moreover, this gives a way to study specializations in families of non-singular cubic surfaces, especially to study boundaries of the irreducible components of $H_k$ inside $(\mathbb{P}^1)^{ss}$ or at least of their images inside the compactification $\overline{\mathcal{M}} = \text{PGL}(3)\setminus(\mathbb{P}^1)^{ss}$.

We give some examples as illustrations.

**Example 3.** Let $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ be 6 points in general position. Let $l$ be the line $P_1P_6$. Let $P_6^l$ be a moving point on $l$, keeping $P_1, \ldots, P_5$ fixed. We see that, except for a finite number of positions, the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_5, P_6^l$ are in general position. Therefore, we have a family $\mathcal{X} \longrightarrow T$ of cubic surfaces, non-singular above a dense open subset of $T = P_1P_6$. If $P_6^l$ lies on the irreducible conic through $P_1, \ldots, P_5$, we get a specialization position, where the corresponding cubic surface is a singular cubic surface $X_0$ with exactly one $A_1$ singularity. We can assume that the twenty-seven lines on fibers of the family $\mathcal{X} \longrightarrow T$ are given by twenty-seven sections in $\mathcal{G}(1,3) \times T \longrightarrow T$. A question arises: what are the specializations of these sections of lines on the surface $X_0$? For each $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$, the sections corresponding to the lines $P_i$ and $C_i$ specialize to the same line among the 21 lines of $X_0$. The other 15 lines of $X_0$ are contained in the 15 sections corresponding to the lines $l_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$. 
**Example 4.** Let $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ be 6 points in general position satisfying the condition $P_1P_6 \cap P_2P_3 \cap P_4P_5 = \{O\}$, see Figure 0.2, (a).

Consider the family determined as in the previous example (the moving point $P_6'$ moves on the line $l = P_1\overline{O}$). We see that the family is contained in $H_1$. If $P_6'$ lies on the irreducible conic through $P_1, \ldots, P_5$, we get a specialization position, where the corresponding cubic surface $X_0$ is singular with an $A_1$ singularity. The point determined by $X_0$ is contained in $H_1 \cap \overline{\mathcal{X}_1} \cap (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss}$; this intersection is an irreducible component of the boundary $\Delta H_1 := H_1 \cap \Delta \cap (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss}$ of $H_1$. If $P_6'$ moves to $O$, the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_5$ and $O$ define a specialization in the family and the corresponding cubic surface is singular with two $A_1$ singularities. These two singularities are the images of lines $P_2P_3$ and $P_4P_5$. Moreover, we show in this thesis that the closure of the subset $2\mathcal{A}_1$ in $(\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss}$ is another irreducible component of the boundary $\Delta H_1$.

![Figure 0.2: Configurations corresponding to points in the boundary of $H_1$](image)

**Example 5.** Suppose that $P_1, \ldots, P_6, O$ satisfy the conditions above. Fix the 4 points $P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5$. Fix a line $d$ through $P_1$ not containing any point of $\{O, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5\}$. Let $d'$ be the line $P_4P_5$. Let $P_1'$ move on $d$ and let $P_6'$ be the point on $d'$ such that the three points $P_1', P_6'$ and $O$ are collinear, see Figure 0.2, (b).

Except for a finite number of values of $t$, the six points $P_2, \ldots, P_6, P_1'$ and $P_6'$ are in general position and the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at those six points is isomorphic to a non-singular cubic surface with at least one star point. Therefore, we have another family in $H_1$. There exists $t_0$ such that $P_6^{t_0} = P_4$ and $P_1^{t_0} = d \cap \overline{P_4P_5}$. The four points $P_1^{t_0}, P_2, P_3, P_5$ and the double point $P_4$ define a specialization in the family and the corresponding cubic surface $X_0$ is singular with one $A_2$ singularity. The singular point of $X_0$ is the image of the line $P_4P_5$.

In this thesis, we prove that the closure of the subset $\mathcal{A}_2 := 0\mathcal{A}_1\mathcal{A}_2$ in $(\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss}$ is one irreducible component of $\Delta H_1$. We show that the boundary $\Delta H_1$ consists of the three irreducible components as described above.

### 0.7 Results in this thesis

The main results of this thesis are in Chapter 2 and 3. Chapter 1 deals with some basis facts on cubic surfaces and actions of group varieties. We study non-singular
cubic surfaces with star points in Chapter 2. We describe the specific configurations of six points in general position corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with a given number of star points. We consider the irreducibility, the local closedness and the dimension of $H_k$. Moreover, we determine the inclusion relationship between the irreducible components of these $H_k$.

In Chapter 3, we study the boundaries of the subsets $H_k$ inside $\mathbb{P}^9$ and the boundaries of their images in the compactification $\overline{M}$. To do so, we describe in Section 3.1 a classification of singular cubic surfaces and compute the number of singular points, the number of lines on each singular cubic surface with their configuration. This classification can be found in [B-W]. Moreover, we compute the codimension of these classes and determine the relationship between their closures. In Section 3.2, we prove the basic fact that semi-stable cubic surfaces are those containing at most $A_2$ singularities and stable cubic surfaces are those containing at most $A_1$ singularities. This fact were mentioned in [GIT], p. 80 as well as in [Mu3], p. 51, but we do not know a reference for a proof. In Section 3.3, we study semi-stable cubic surfaces. We prove that for any semi-stable cubic surface $X$, there exists a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that the linear system $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ of cubic forms through $\mathcal{P}$ has dimension 4; furthermore, for any basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$, the closure of the image of the rational map from $\mathbb{P}^2$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ defined by the basis is isomorphic to $X$. We also define and compute the multiplicities of lines and triple intersections on semi-stable cubic surfaces. Section 3.4 contains several results on the boundaries of $H_k$ and the boundaries of the images of $H_k$ in $\overline{M}$. We prove that the image of all semi-stable but non-stable points in the quotient space $\overline{M}$ is just one point.
Chapter 1

Preliminaries

Throughout the thesis, we work on schemes and varieties over an algebraic closed field with characteristic 0.

1.1 General position

Definition: Let $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5$ and $P_6$ be points of $\mathbb{P}^2$. They are called in general position if no 3 of them are collinear and not all of them lie on a conic.

Denote:

$$\Phi = \{ \mathcal{P} = (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6 \text{ are in general position} \}.$$

Proposition 1.1.1. As a subset of $(\mathbb{P}^2)^6$, the set $\Phi$ is an open subvariety of dimension 12.

Proof. Clear. □

1.2 The space of lines in $\mathbb{P}^3$

Definition: Let $l$ be a line in $\mathbb{P}^3$. Let $a, b \in l$ be two points such that $a \neq b$, given by $a = (a_0 : a_1 : a_2 : a_3)$ and $b = (b_0 : b_1 : b_2 : b_3)$. Denote $(P_{ij})_{0 \leq i < j \leq 3}$ where $P_{ij} = a_i b_j - a_j b_i$, as a point of $\mathbb{P}^5$. This point does not depend on the choice of $a, b$ on $l$. The $P_{ij}$ are called the Plücker coordinates of $l$ in $\mathbb{P}^5$.

Lemma 1.2.1. The set of lines in $\mathbb{P}^3$ in Plücker coordinates is a closed subvariety of $\mathbb{P}^5$ given by $\mathcal{G} = V(v_{01}v_{23} - v_{02}v_{13} + v_{03}v_{12}) \subset \mathbb{P}^5$.

Proof. [Mu1], p. 173 □
1.3 The space of cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$

**Definition:** Fix an ordering in the set $\{x_0^{\alpha_0}x_1^{\alpha_1}x_2^{\alpha_2}x_3^{\alpha_3} \mid \alpha_0 + \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \alpha_3 = 3\}$ of monomials of degree 3 in $k[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3]$. In $\mathbb{P}^3$, each cubic surface $X \subset \mathbb{P}^3$ is given by a non-zero homogeneous polynomial:

$$X = V\left( \sum_{\alpha_0+\alpha_1+\alpha_2+\alpha_3=3} c_{\alpha} x_0^{\alpha_0}x_1^{\alpha_1}x_2^{\alpha_2}x_3^{\alpha_3} \right),$$

(i.e not all $c_{\alpha}$ equal to zero). It corresponds with a point $c = (c_{\alpha}) \in \mathbb{P}^{19}$.

Conversely, for each point $c = (c_{\alpha}) \in \mathbb{P}^{19}$, let $H_c$ be the cubic surface $V(\sum c_{\alpha}x^{\alpha})$ in $\mathbb{P}^3$, let

$$\mathcal{H} = \bigcup_{c \in \mathbb{P}^{19}} H_c \subset \mathbb{P}^3 \times \mathbb{P}^{19}.$$  

Then $\mathcal{H} = V(\sum c_{\alpha}x^{\alpha})$. Therefore $\mathcal{H}$ is a closed subvariety of $\mathbb{P}^3 \times \mathbb{P}^{19}$ of dimension 21.

Let $\mathcal{H} \supset S = \{(x, c) \mid H_c \text{ is singular}\}$, let $\Delta = p_2(S)$, where $p_2 : \mathbb{P}^3 \times \mathbb{P}^{19} \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}^{19}$ is the projection. Then $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ parameterizes the set of non-singular cubic surfaces.

In fact, there exists a polynomial $D \in k[T_0, \ldots, T_{19}]$ such that $\Delta = V(D)$, see [GIT] p. 79. In particular, this implies that:

**Proposition 1.3.1.** $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ is an open subset of $\mathbb{P}^{19}$.

**Proposition 1.3.2.** The blowing-up $\tilde{X}$ of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at six points in general position is isomorphic to a non-singular cubic surface in $\mathbb{P}^3$.

**Proof.** [H], V.4.7. □

**Proposition 1.3.3.** The linear space of plane cubic forms passing through 6 points in general position has dimension 4. A choice of a basis for this linear space determines a rational map from $\mathbb{P}^2$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$. The closure of the image of this rational map is a non-singular cubic surface. This cubic surface contains exactly 27 lines. They are:

(i) the exceptional curves $\tilde{P}_i$, for $i = 1, \ldots, 6$ (six of these),

(ii) the strict transform $\tilde{l}_{ij}$ of the line $l_{ij}$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ containing $P_i$ and $P_j$, $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ (fifteen of these), and

(iii) the strict transform $\tilde{C}_j$ of the conic $C_j$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ containing the five $P_i$ for $i \neq j, j = 1, \ldots, 6$ (six of these).

**Proof.** [H], V.4.9. □

From now on, we use notations $\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{C}_i, C_i$ for the lines and curves as in Proposition 1.3.3.

**Proposition 1.3.4.** Let $X$ be a non-singular cubic surface in $\mathbb{P}^3$, and let $E_1, \ldots, E_6$ be any set of six mutually skew lines chosen among the 27 lines on $X$. Then there exists a morphism $\pi : X \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}^2$, making $X$ isomorphic to the blowing-up of that $\mathbb{P}^2$ with six points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ (no 3 collinear and not all 6 on a conic) such that $E_1, \ldots, E_6$ are the exceptional curves for $\pi$. 
1.4 Algebraic groups and actions of algebraic groups on varieties

Proof. [H], V.4.10 and [Mu1], 8.22, 8.23. □

Proposition 1.3.5. Let $P_1, \ldots, P_5$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ and no 3 of them are collinear. Then there exists a unique, irreducible conic containing $P_1, \ldots, P_5$.

Proof. [H], V.4.2. □

1.4 Algebraic groups and actions of algebraic groups on varieties

In this section, we recall some basic facts about algebraic groups and actions of them on varieties. These definitions and notations can be found in [N], Chapter 5, §1 or [GIT], Chapter 0, §1.

Definition: An algebraic group is a group $G$ together with a structure of algebraic variety on $G$ such that the maps:

$$G \times G \longrightarrow G$$

$$(g, g') \mapsto gg'$$

and

$$G \longrightarrow G$$

g \mapsto g^{-1}$$

are morphisms of algebraic varieties.

A homomorphism of algebraic groups is a map which is simultaneously a homomorphism of groups and a morphism of algebraic varieties.

Definition: An action of an algebraic group on a variety $X$ is a morphism

$$\varphi : G \times X \longrightarrow X$$

such that for any $g, g' \in G$ and $x \in X$ we have

$$\varphi(g, \varphi(g', x)) = \varphi(gg', x)$$

and $\varphi(e, x) = x$

where $e$ is the identity element of $G$.

For convenience, one usually write $gx$ for $\varphi(g, x)$. So that the above conditions become

$$g(g'x) = (gg')x$$

and

$$ex = x.$$ 

Definition: Let $G$ be an algebraic group acting on a variety $X$; let $x \in X$. The stabilizer $G_x$ of $x$ is the closed subgroup $G_x = \{g \in G \mid gx = x\}$ of $G$.

The orbit $O(x)$ of $x$ is the subset $O(x) = \{gx \mid g \in G\}$ of $X$.

A point $x$ (a subset $W$) of $X$ is said to be invariant under $G$ if $gx = x$ ($gW = W$) for all $g \in G$.

Definition: Let $G$ be an algebraic group acting on varieties $X$ and $Y$. A morphism $\phi : X \longrightarrow Y$ is a $G$-morphism if $\phi(gx) = g\phi(x)$ for all $x \in X$ and $g \in G$.

If $G$ acts trivially on $Y$ (i.e. $gy = y$ for all $g \in G$ and $y \in Y$) then a $G$-morphism is called $G$-invariant.
Example 6. The projective general linear group PGL(n) is an algebraic group. Let
\[ F = \sum_{\alpha_0 + \cdots + \alpha_3 = 3} c_{\alpha_0} x_0^{\alpha_0} x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3} \]
be a non-zero cubic form in \( k[x_0, \ldots, x_3] \). Let \( A \in \text{PGL}(3) \). Denote \( X \) for the column matrix of \( x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3 \). Then \( F(AX) \) is a non-zero cubic form in \( k[x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3] \). This induces a natural action of PGL(3) on \( \mathbb{P}^3 \). In Chapter 3, we shall study this action.
Chapter 2

Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

In this chapter, we study non-singular cubic surfaces. A star point (also called an Eckardt point) on a non-singular cubic surface is the point of intersection of 3 lines on the surface. We denote by $H_k$ the subset of points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$ with at least $k$ star points. For every $k$, we determine the dimension and the number of irreducible components of $H_k$. We also determine the subset of $H_k$ which consists of points corresponding to surfaces with exactly a given number of star points.

A non-singular cubic surface can be viewed as the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at 6 points in general position. A close study of the configuration of 6 points in $\mathbb{P}^2$ enables us to describe the sets of points in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with a given number of star points.

In his book “The Non-Singular Cubic Surfaces” [S], B. Segre gave a classification of non-singular cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$ with a given number of Eckardt points. Our methods give another proof of the possible number of star points on a non-singular cubic surface.

2.1 Star points. Star triples. Star-Steiner sets

Each non-singular cubic surface $X$ has 45 tritangent planes, i.e the planes containing 3 lines of $X$. Moreover, there exist at most 3 lines among 27 lines of $X$ through any point $P \in X$. In this case they form one of 45 tritangent planes of $X$ ([R], pp. 102, 103).

Definition: A star point of a non-singular cubic surface is the intersection point of three lines on the surface.

Definition: Let $H_k \subset \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ denote the set of points corresponding to cubic surfaces with at least $k$ star points.

In blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at 6 points in general position $P_1, \ldots, P_6$, we see that each tritangent plane is defined uniquely by a triple of lines in form $(P_iC_jl_{ij})$ or $(l_{ij}l_{mn}l_{kh})$. So, sometimes, we use these triples of lines to denote the tritangent planes.

Definition: Let $T$ denote the set of 45 triples of lines on a given non-singular cubic surface $X$, which span the tritangent planes. If a triple in $T$ forms a star point then it
is called a star triple.

**Remark 2.1.1.** Let $T_1$ and $T_2$ be 2 triples in $T$ having no line in common. Each line of $T_1$ meets exactly one line of $T_2$. There exists uniquely another triple $T_3 \in T$ such that each line in $T_3$ forms one tritangent plane with one line of $T_1$ and one of $T_2$. A such set of 3 triples in $T$ is called a Steiner set.

**Example 7.** The following are Steiner sets:

(i) $\{(\bar{P}_1 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{12}), (\bar{P}_2 \bar{C}_3 \bar{l}_{23}), (\bar{P}_3 \bar{C}_1 \bar{l}_{13})\}$;

(ii) $\{(\bar{P}_1 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{12}), (\bar{P}_3 \bar{C}_4 \bar{l}_{34}), (\bar{l}_{14} \bar{l}_{23} \bar{l}_{56})\}$;

(iii) $\{(\bar{l}_{14} \bar{l}_{23} \bar{l}_{56}), (\bar{l}_{35} \bar{l}_{16} \bar{l}_{24}), (\bar{l}_{26} \bar{l}_{45} \bar{l}_{13})\}.

**Remark 2.1.2.**

(i) By blowing-up, we see that any Steiner set of a given non-singular cubic surface $X$ has one of three following forms:

(a) $S_1 = \{(\bar{P}_i \bar{C}_j \bar{l}_{ij}), (\bar{P}_j \bar{C}_k \bar{l}_{jk}), (\bar{P}_k \bar{C}_i \bar{l}_{ik})\}$,

(b) $S_2 = \{(\bar{P}_i \bar{C}_j \bar{l}_{ij}), (\bar{P}_k \bar{C}_h \bar{l}_{kh}), (\bar{l}_{i} \bar{l}_{j} \bar{l}_{k} \bar{l}_{mn})\}$,

(c) $S_3 = \{(\bar{I}_{mn} \bar{l}_{kh} \bar{l}_{ij}), (\bar{l}_{k} \bar{l}_{m} \bar{l}_{j} \bar{l}_{hn}), (\bar{l}_{i} \bar{l}_{h} \bar{l}_{m} \bar{l}_{nk})\},$

where the indices belong to $\{1, \ldots, 6\}$ and the different indices denote different numbers.

(ii) The 9 lines of a Steiner set of a given non-singular cubic surface $X$ can form a Steiner set in exactly two ways. For example $\{(\bar{P}_1 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{12}), (\bar{P}_2 \bar{C}_3 \bar{l}_{23}), (\bar{P}_3 \bar{C}_1 \bar{l}_{13})\}$ and $\{(\bar{P}_1 \bar{C}_3 \bar{l}_{13}), (\bar{P}_3 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{23}), (\bar{P}_2 \bar{C}_1 \bar{l}_{12})\}$. In the other words, any Steiner set $S = \{(l_1 l_2 l_3), (d_1 d_2 d_3), (m_1 m_2 m_3)\}$ can be reordered and written in matrix form:

$$
\begin{bmatrix}
  l_1 & l_2 & l_3 \\
  d_1 & d_2 & d_3 \\
  m_1 & m_2 & m_3 
\end{bmatrix}
$$

such that each row or each column of the above matrix expresses a triple in $T$ and 3 triples from the 3 rows as well as from the 3 columns form a Steiner set.

We recall the concept and properties of the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{123}$ (see [H], V 4.2.3) corresponding to 3 given points $P_1 = (1 : 0 : 0), P_2 = (0 : 1 : 0), P_3 = (0 : 0 : 1), \varphi_{123}$

\[
\mathbb{P}^2 \xrightarrow{\varphi_{123}} \mathbb{P}^2
\begin{bmatrix}
  x_0 & x_1 & x_2 \\
  \end{bmatrix}
\begin{bmatrix}
  y_1 & y_2 & y_3 \\
  \end{bmatrix}
\]

Its inverse is $(y_0 : y_1 : y_2) \mapsto (y_1 y_2 : y_0 y_2 : y_0 y_1)$. So the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{123}$ gives an isomorphism:

\[
\mathbb{P}^2 \cong V(x_0 x_1 x_2) \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{P}^2 - V(y_0 y_1 y_2).
\]

Let $V$ be the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at $P_1, P_2, P_3$. We have the following diagram:
2.1. Star points. Star triples. Star-Steiner sets

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{P}^2_X \\
\pi \quad \psi \\
\mathbb{P}^2_Y
\end{array}
\]

where \( \psi \) is the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2_Y \) at \( Q_1 = (1 : 0 : 0) \), \( Q_2 = (0 : 1 : 0) \), \( Q_3 = (0 : 0 : 1) \) such that:

(i) The exceptional curves with respect to \( Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 \) are the strict transforms of \( P_2P_3, P_1P_3 \) and \( P_1P_2 \), respectively.

(ii) The strict transforms of \( Q_1Q_2, Q_2Q_3 \) and \( Q_3Q_1 \) are the exceptional curves \( P_2, P_1 \) and \( P_2 \) of \( P_3, P_1 \) and \( P_2 \), respectively.

(iii) \( \varphi_{123} = \psi \circ \pi^{-1} \).

Then through the quadratic transformation:

a) The points \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) correspond to \( l_{23} = Q_2Q_3 \), \( l_{13} = Q_1Q_3 \), \( l_{12} = Q_1Q_2 \), respectively.

b) An irreducible conic passing through \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) corresponds to a line not containing any \( Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 \); conversely, a line not containing any \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) corresponds to an irreducible conic passing through \( Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 \).

c) An irreducible conic containing 2 of \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \), say \( P_1 \) and \( P_2 \), corresponds to an irreducible conic containing \( Q_1 \) and \( Q_2 \).

d) A line containing only one point of \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \), say \( P_1 \), corresponds to a line containing only \( Q_1 \) of \( Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 \).

**Proposition 2.1.3.** Let \( \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots , P_b) \in \Phi \). Then the blowing up of \( \mathbb{P}^2_X \) at \( \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots , P_b) \) is isomorphic to the blowing up of \( \mathbb{P}^2_Y \) at \( Q = (Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, \varphi(P_1), \varphi(P_3), \varphi(P_6)) \in \Phi \), where \( P_i, Q_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 3 \) have coordinates as above and \( \varphi \) is the quadratic transformation with respect to \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \).

(Note that, we say “blowing up at \( \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots , P_b) \)” in stead of “blowing up at \( P_1, \ldots , P_b \)”.)

**Proof.** Let \( X \) and \( Y \) be the blowing-ups of \( \mathbb{P}^2_X \) at \( \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots , P_b) \) and \( \mathbb{P}^2_Y \) at \( (Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, \varphi(P_1), \varphi(P_3), \varphi(P_6)) \), respectively, where \( P_i, Q_i \) have coordinates as above and \( \varphi \) is the quadratic transformation w.r.t \( P_i \)'s, for \( i \in \{1, 2, 3\} \). Consider the diagram
where $V \xrightarrow{\pi} \mathbb{P}_X^2$ and $V \xrightarrow{\psi} \mathbb{P}_Y^2$ are blowing-ups of $\mathbb{P}_X^2$ at $P_1, P_2, P_3$ and of $\mathbb{P}_Y^2$ at $Q_1, Q_2, Q_3$, respectively; where $X \xrightarrow{g_1} V$ and $Y \xrightarrow{g_2} V$ are the blowing-ups of $V$ at $\pi^{-1}(P_i)$ and $V$ at $\psi^{-1}(\varphi(P_i))$ respectively, for $i \in \{4, 5, 6\}$.

Since $\psi \circ \pi^{-1} = \varphi$, so $\pi^{-1}(P_i) = \psi^{-1}(\varphi(P_i))$ for $i = 4, 5, 6$. This implies that the blowing-ups of $\mathbb{P}_X^2$ at $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathbb{P}_Y^2$ at $\mathcal{Q}$ are exactly the blowing up of $V$ at $\pi^{-1}(P_i)$ for $i = 4, 5, 6$.

Therefore $X \cong Y$. 

\textbf{Remark 2.1.4.} Let $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{P}'$ be two elements of $\Phi$. If $\mathcal{P}'$ can be obtained from $\mathcal{P}$ by a quadratic transformation then the blowing-ups of $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathcal{P}'$ are isomorphic.

From now on we denote $(ijk)$ for the quadratic transformation with respect to $P_i, P_j, P_k$ for $i, j, k \in \{1, \ldots, 6\}$.

\textbf{Lemma 2.1.5.} For any $i, j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, each Steiner set of the form $S_i$ can be transformed to an element of the form $S_j$ by quadratic transformations. (Here $S_i$ is used as in (2.1.2)).

\textbf{Proof.} Let $s \in S_2$, we can assume (up to permutations of the permutation group of 6 letters) that:

$s = \{(P_1 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{12}), (P_3 \bar{C}_4 \bar{l}_{34}), (\bar{l}_{14} \bar{l}_{23} \bar{l}_{56})\}$ then

(124) exchanges $s$ with $\{(P_4 \bar{C}_2 \bar{l}_{24}), (P_3 \bar{C}_4 \bar{l}_{34}), (P_2 \bar{C}_3 \bar{l}_{23})\} \in S_1$;

(135) exchanges $s$ with $\{(\bar{l}_{35} \bar{l}_{46} \bar{l}_{12}), (\bar{l}_{15} \bar{l}_{26} \bar{l}_{34}), (\bar{l}_{14} \bar{l}_{23} \bar{l}_{56})\} \in S_3$.

This means that one member of $S_1$ and one of $S_3$ can be exchanged by a sequence of two quadratic transformations. \hfill \square

\textbf{Proposition 2.1.6.} Let $S = \{(l_1 l_2 l_3), (d_1 d_2 d_3), (t_1 t_2 t_3)\}$ be a Steiner set of a given non-singular cubic surface $X$ and $m_1 = (l_1 l_2 l_3) \cap (d_1 d_2 d_3)$, $m_2 = (l_1 l_2 l_3) \cap (t_1 t_2 l_3)$, $m_3 = (d_1 d_2 d_3) \cap (t_1, l_2, t_3)$. Then $m_1$, $m_2$ and $m_3$ have a common point.
Proof. Since \( m_1, m_2 \) are contained in the hyperplane \( H \) spanned by \( (l_1l_2l_3) \), the line \( m_1 \) meets \( m_2 \). Similarly, the line \( m_1 \) meets \( m_3 \), the line \( m_2 \) meets \( m_3 \). If \( m_1 = m_2 \) then \( m_3 = m_1 \). Otherwise, since \( m_3 \not\subseteq H = \text{span}(m_1, m_2) \), this implies that \( m_1, m_2 \) and \( m_3 \) have a common point.

\[ \square \]

**Corollary 2.1.7.**

(i) Assume the hypothesis as in (2.1.6) and suppose that \( (l_1d_1t_1) \) forms a star point \( A \). Then \( m_1 \cap m_2 \cap m_3 \supset \{ A \} \).

(ii) Let \( S = \{(l_1l_2l_3), (d_1d_2d_3), (t_1t_2t_3)\} \) be a Steiner set of a given non-singular cubic surface \( X \). If \( (l_1l_2l_3) \) and \( (d_1d_2d_3) \) form 2 star points \( A_1 \) and \( A_2 \), respectively, then \( (t_1t_2t_3) \) forms another star point \( A_3 \) and \( A_1, A_2, A_3 \) lie on a line.

**Proof.**

(i) Follows directly from the proposition.

(ii) By renumbering the triples of \( S \), we can assume that \( \{(l_1d_1t_1), (l_2d_2t_2), (l_3d_3t_3)\} \) is another Steiner set formed by 9 lines of \( S \) (2.1.2). Then apply the proposition and (i) for the Steiner set \( \{(l_1d_1t_1), (l_2d_2t_2), (l_3d_3t_3)\} \). See also [S], p. 147.

\[ \square \]

**Definition:** A Steiner set such that every of the 3 members gives a star point is called a star-Steiner set.

**Proposition 2.1.8.** A non-singular cubic surface does not have three star triples which have a line in common.

**Proof.** Up to quadratic transformations, we can assume that the common line is the strict transform of a single conic \( C_4 \). The three star points come from tangent points of 3 tangent lines from \( P_4 \). This is impossible! \[ \square \]

### 2.2 A study of \( H_1 \)

For each \( x \in H_1 \), and view the corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) as the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at 6 points in general position, then each star triple of \( X_x \) is of the form \((P,C,l_i)\) or \((l_i,l_m,l_k)\). As we have seen in (2.1.4) and (2.1.5), we can consider \( X_x \) as the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at \( P = (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \), where \( l_1 \cap l_3 \cap l_5 \neq \emptyset \). For this, if there is another one, say \((l_i,l_k,l_m)\), then the permutation \((i)(j)(k)(m)(n)(h)\) of \( S_6 \) makes it correspond to the previous one.

Let

\[
\mathcal{L} = \{[X_3^2], L_1, \ldots, L_6) \mid X_3^2 \text{ is a non-singular cubic surface in } \mathbb{P}^3; \]

\[
L_i \text{ is a line on } X_3^2; \ L_i \cap L_j = \emptyset \text{ for } 1 \leq i \neq j \leq 6 \} \subset \mathbb{P}^{19} \times G^6.
\]
Consider:
\[
\mathcal{L} \xrightarrow{p} \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta
\]
\[
([X^2_3], L_1, \ldots, L_6) \mapsto [X^2_3].
\]

We know that for any \( x \in \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \), the number of elements of \( p^{-1}(x) \) is 51840. This implies that, \( \dim \mathcal{L} = 19 \), see [H], V.4.10.1 or [Mu1], p. 180.

Let
\[
\mathcal{D} = \left\{ (\mathcal{P}, X, [X^2_3], L_1, \ldots, L_6) \mid \mathcal{P} \in \Phi; X \text{ is the blowing-up of } \mathbb{P}^2 \text{ at } \mathcal{P}; L_i \text{ is the exceptional curve w.r.t. } P_i \in \mathcal{P}; X^2_3 \text{ is an embedding of } X \text{ in } \mathbb{P}^3 \right\}.
\]

Consider
\[
\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\Theta} \Phi
\]
\[
(\mathcal{P}, X, [X^2_3], L_1, \ldots, L_6) \mapsto \mathcal{P}.
\]

Note that for any \( \mathcal{P} \in \Phi \), we have \( \Theta^{-1}(\mathcal{P}) \cong \text{Aut} \mathbb{P}^3 \cong \text{PGL}(3, k) \cong \text{GL}(4, k)/k^* \), see [H], II.7.1.1. Consequently, \( \dim \Theta^{-1}(\mathcal{P}) = 15 \).

Consider
\[
\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \mathcal{L}
\]
\[
(\mathcal{P}, X, [X^2_3], L_1, \ldots, P_6) \mapsto ([X^2_3], L_1, \ldots, L_6).
\]

Note that for any \( \alpha \in \mathcal{L} \), we have \( \Gamma^{-1}(\alpha) \cong \text{Aut} \mathbb{P}^2 \cong \text{PGL}(2, k) \cong \text{GL}(3, k)/k^* \).

Consequently, \( \dim \Gamma^{-1}(\alpha) = 8 \), see [H], II.7.1.1.

Let \( K_1 = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset \right\}, D_1 = \Theta^{-1}(K_1) \) and \( L_1 = \Gamma(D_1) \).

Then we have \( H_1 = p(L_1) \).

**Theorem 2.2.1.** The set \( H_1 \) is a closed, irreducible subvariety of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) of dimension 18.

**Proof.** We first prove that \( K_1 \) is irreducible of dimension 11. Let
\[
\mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{ (Q, l_i, l_j, l_k) \mid l_i \in \mathcal{G}; Q \in l_i; l_i \neq l_j \text{ for } 1 \leq i < j \leq 3 \right\} \subset \mathbb{P}^2 \times \mathcal{G}^3,
\]
\[
\mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{ (Q, l_i, l_j, l_k, P_1, \ldots, P_6) \mid (Q, l_i, l_j, l_k) \in \mathcal{F}_1; P_i \neq P_j \text{ for } 1 \leq i < j \leq 3; \right. \]
\[
\left. P_1, P_2 \in l_1; P_3, P_4 \in l_2; P_5, P_6 \in l_3; (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^6.
\]

Consider \( \mathcal{F}_2 \xrightarrow{p_2} \mathcal{F}_1 \xrightarrow{p_1} \mathbb{P}^2 \) where \( p_1, p_2 \) are the projections. Since \( p_1 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible and has dimension 3, this follows that \( \mathcal{F}_1 \) is also irreducible and \( \mathcal{F}_1 \) has dimension 5. Moreover, the map \( p_2 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible and has dimension 6, so \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) is irreducible and has dimension 5+6=11. Finally the projection \( \mathcal{F}_2 \rightarrow K_1 \) is an isomorphism. This implies \( K_1 \) is irreducible and has dimension 11.
2.2. A study of $H_1$

Consider the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \mathcal{L} \\
\downarrow \circlearrowleft \Phi \\
\mathbb{P}^1 \xrightarrow{p} \Delta.
\end{array}
$$

This induces

$$
\begin{array}{c}
D_1 \xrightarrow{\Gamma} L_1 \\
\downarrow \circlearrowleft \Phi \\
K_1 \xrightarrow{p} H_1.
\end{array}
$$

Our task is now to prove that $D_1$ is irreducible and then this implies that $H_1 = p \circ \Gamma(D_1)$ is irreducible. Let $\mathcal{L}_P$ denote the set of cubic forms passing through the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ of a given $P$ in $\Phi$. This set is a linear vector space of dimension 4. Let

$$Y = \left\{(P, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \mid P = (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in K_1; \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4 \text{ are non-zero cubic forms passing through } P_1, \ldots, P_6 \right\} \subset K_1 \times (\mathbb{P}^0)^4$$

and

$$U = \left\{(P, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \in Y \mid \{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4\} \text{ forms a basis of } \mathcal{L}_P \right\}.$$ 

Then we have the following commutative diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
U & \xrightarrow{\text{open}} & Y \\
\downarrow & \xrightarrow{\text{closed}} & \downarrow \xrightarrow{\text{closed}} \xrightarrow{g} K_1 \times (\mathbb{P}^0)^4 \\
& \downarrow & \downarrow \xrightarrow{p} \\
& K_1 &
\end{array}
$$

where the map $p : K_1 \times (\mathbb{P}^0)^4 \rightarrow K_1$ is the projection. The map $Y \xrightarrow{p} K_1$ in the above diagram is surjective and every fiber is isomorphic to $(\mathbb{P}^0)^4$, therefore $Y$ is irreducible. Consequently $U$ is irreducible. For any basis $\{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4\}$ of $\mathcal{L}_P$, there exist embeddings in $\mathbb{P}^3$ of the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at $P$; namely embeddings come from:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{P}^2 \\
(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \longmapsto (\lambda_1 \varphi_1 : \lambda_2 \varphi_2 : \lambda_3 \varphi_3 : \lambda_4 \varphi_4),
\end{array}
$$

for $\lambda_i \in k^*$ such that $\{\lambda_1 \varphi_1, \lambda_2 \varphi_2, \lambda_3 \varphi_3, \lambda_4 \varphi_4\}$ is a basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$. Therefore, the set $D_1$ is isomorphic to an open subset of $U \times \mathbb{P}^3$. So that $D_1$ is irreducible, too. Consequently, the set $D_1$ has dimension $11+12+3=26$. Therefore, $\dim(H_1)=26-8=18$. For the closedness of $H_1$, see the proof of the Theorem 2.3.1. $\Box$
Remark 2.2.2. We can prove the irreducibility of $H_1$ in another way as follows.

Consider the subset $V_1$ of $\mathbb{P}^9$ consisting of points whose corresponding cubic surfaces have 3 lines meeting at one point. Given $x \in V_1$, we can choose a system of coordinates of $\mathbb{P}^3$ such that $X_x$ is determined by a non-zero cubic form

$$Qz + axy(x - y)$$

(2.1)

where $Q$ is a quadratic form in $x, y, z, t$ and $a \in k$. Each such non-zero cubic form corresponds to a point of $\mathbb{P}^{10}$. Let $S \subset \mathbb{P}^{10}$ denote the set of all points in $H_1$ determined by non-zero cubic forms (2.1). In particular, the subset $S$ is irreducible.

Consider the surjective map $\text{PGL}(3) \times S \rightarrow H_1$ deduced by the natural action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{10}$. This implies that $H_1$ is irreducible.

However, we do not see how we can use this method for the case $H_k$ for $k > 1$.

### 2.3 A study of $H_2$ and $H_3$

**Definition:** Let

$$H_2^{(2)} = \{ x \in H_2 \mid \text{the surface } X_x \text{ has a pair of star triples having one line in common} \},$$

$$H_2^{(3)} = \{ x \in H_2 \mid \text{the surface } X_x \text{ has 2 star triples having no line in common} \}.$$

For each $x \in H_2^{(2)}$, view $X_x$ as blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at 6 points in general position. Moreover, by Remark 2.1.4 and Proposition 2.1.5, we can assume that $X_x$ has a pair of star triples of one of the following forms:

(i) $(l_{12}l_{34}l_{56})$, $(l_{12}l_{35}l_{46})$;

(ii) $(l_{12}l_{34}l_{56})$, $(l_{12}l_{36}l_{45})$;

(iii) $(l_{12}l_{34}l_{56})$, $(l_{12}C_1P_2)$;

(iv) $(l_{12}l_{34}l_{56})$, $(l_{12}C_2P_1)$.

The first and the second just differ by the permutation $(56)$. The third and the fourth differ by the permutation $(12)$. Moreover, the quadratic transformation (135) exchanges the first and the third.

Let

$$K_2^{(2)} = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{Q_1\}, l_{12} \cap l_{35} \cap l_{46} = \{Q_2\} \right\},$$

see Figure 2.1.

Let $D_2^{(2)} = \Theta^{-1}(K_2^{(2)})$, $L_2^{(2)} = \Gamma(D_2^{(2)})$. Then by the argument above, we have $H_2^{(2)} = p(L_2^{(2)})$.

Similarly, up to permutations and quadratic transformations, we can assume that each cubic surface corresponding to an element of the subsets $H_2^{(3)}$, has a pair of star triples of one of the following kinds:
2.3. A study of $H_2$ and $H_3$

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure2_1}
\caption{The configuration for members of $K_2^{(2)}$}
\end{figure}

(i) $(\bar{l}_{12}\bar{l}_{34}\bar{l}_{56}), (\bar{P}_i\bar{C}_j\bar{l}_{ij})$;

(ii) $(\bar{l}_{12}\bar{l}_{34}\bar{l}_{56}), (\bar{l}_{45}\bar{l}_{26}\bar{l}_{13})$.

But it is easy to see that the quadratic transformation$(imm)$ for $j \notin \{m, n\}$ and $\{1, 2\} \cap \{i, m, n\} \neq \emptyset, \{3, 4\} \cap \{i, m, n\} \neq \emptyset, \{5, 6\} \cap \{i, m, n\} \neq \emptyset$ exchanges (ii) to (i). Moreover, if there exists another pair, say $(\bar{l}_{ij}\bar{l}_{k}\bar{l}_{mn}), (\bar{l}_{hm}\bar{l}_{jn}\bar{l}_{kk})$, then the permutation $(1)(2)(3)(4)(5)(6)$ exchanges it to $(\bar{l}_{12}\bar{l}_{34}\bar{l}_{56}), (\bar{l}_{45}\bar{l}_{26}\bar{l}_{13})$.

Let

$$K_2^{(3)} = \{(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{Q_1\}, l_{13} \cap l_{45} \cap l_{26} = \{Q_2\}\},$$

see Figure 2.2. Let $D_2^{(3)} = \Theta^{-1}(K_2^{(3)}), L_2^{(3)} = \Gamma(D_2^{(3)})$, and then by the above argument,

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{figure2_2}
\caption{The configuration for members of $K_2^{(3)}$}
\end{figure}

we have $H_2^{(3)} = p(L_2^{(3)})$.

**Theorem 2.3.1.** The set $H_2$ is closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ and has two irreducible components $H_2^{(2)}$ and $H_2^{(3)}$ of dimension 17.
Chapter 2. Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

Proof. We have the following diagram:

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & \mathcal{L} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
\Phi & \xrightarrow{\text{open}} & \mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta
\end{array} \]

This induces

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
D_2^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & L_2^{(2)} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
K_2^{(2)} & \xrightarrow{\text{open}} & H_2^{(2)}
\end{array} \]

Suppose that $K_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible, we prove that $D_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible then this implies that $H_2^{(2)} = p \circ \Gamma(D_2^{(2)})$ is irreducible.

Let

\[ Y = \left\{ (\mathcal{P}, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \mid \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in K_2^{(2)}; \right\} \subset K_2^{(2)} \times (\mathbb{P}^9)^4 \]

and

\[ U = \left\{ (\mathcal{P}, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \in Y \mid \{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4\} \text{ forms a basis of } \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}} \right\}, \]

where $\mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}}$ is used as on page 19.

Consider the following commutative diagram:

\[ \begin{array}{ccc}
U & \xrightarrow{\text{open}} & Y \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow p \\
& \xrightarrow{\text{closed}} & K_2^{(2)} \times (\mathbb{P}^9)^4 \\
& & K_2^{(2)}
\end{array} \]

where the map $p : K_2^{(2)} \times (\mathbb{P}^9)^4 \longrightarrow K_2^{(2)}$ is the projection. The map $g : Y \longrightarrow K_2^{(2)}$ is surjective and every fiber is isomorphic to $(\mathbb{P}^9)^4$. Therefore $Y$ is irreducible. Consequently, the set $U$ is irreducible. As in the proof of (2.2.1), we see that $D_2^{(2)}$ is isomorphic to an open subset of $U \times \mathbb{P}^3$. In particular $D_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible.

Next, we prove that $K_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible of dimension 10. Let

\[ \mathcal{F}_1 = \{(Q_1, Q_2) \mid Q_i \in \mathbb{P}^2, Q_1 \neq Q_2\} \xrightarrow{\text{open}} (\mathbb{P}^2)^2, \]

\[ \mathcal{F}_2 = \{(Q_1, Q_2, l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4) \mid (Q_1, Q_2) \in \mathcal{F}_1; l_i \in \mathcal{G}; \{Q_1\} = l_1 \cap l_2, \{Q_2\} = l_3 \cap l_4 \} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathcal{G}^4 \]
and
\[ F_3 = \left\{ (Q_1, Q_2, l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4, P_1, P_2) \mid (Q_1, Q_2, l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4) \in F_2; \ P_1, P_2 \in \overline{Q_1Q_2} \right\} \subseteq F_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^1)^2. \]

Consider \( F_3 \xrightarrow{p_1} F_2 \xrightarrow{p_2} F_1 \) where the maps \( p_1, p_2 \) are projections. Since \( F_1 \) is irreducible of dimension 4, the map \( p_2 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 4, so \( F_2 \) is irreducible of dimension 8. Also, the map \( p_1 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 2, so \( F_3 \) is irreducible of dimension 8+2=10. Moreover \( K_2^{(2)} \) is an open subset of \( F_3 \) if we let \( \{ P_3 \} = l_1 \cap l_3, \{ P_4 \} = l_1 \cap l_4, \{ P_5 \} = l_2 \cap l_3, \{ P_6 \} = l_2 \cap l_4 \). Therefore \( K_2^{(2)} \) is irreducible of dimension 10. This implies that \( \text{dim}(H_2^{(2)}) = 10+15-8=17. \)

Similarly, we prove that \( K_2^{(3)} \) is irreducible of dimension 10 and then \( H_2^{(3)} \) is irreducible of dimension 17.

Finally, we prove that \( H_2^{(2)}, H_2^{(3)} \) and \( H_1 \) are closed. Let
\[ \mathcal{M} = \left\{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \mid x \in \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta; \ l_4 \subset X_x \right\} \subseteq (\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta) \times \mathcal{G}^{27}. \]
Then the projection \( p : \mathcal{M} \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) is finite.

Let \( H_{\alpha} = \left\{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset \right\} \). Consider the maps:
\[ \mathcal{M} \xrightarrow{f_{ij}} \mathcal{G}^3 \]
\[ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \mapsto (l_i, l_j, l_k) \quad \text{for} \ 1 \leq i < j < k \leq 27. \]

Let \( L = \left\{ (l_1, l_2, l_3) \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset \right\} \subseteq \mathcal{G}^3. \) It is easy to see that the set \( K = \left\{ (l_1, l_2) \in \mathcal{G}^2 \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \neq \emptyset \right\} \) is closed in \( \mathcal{G}^2. \) Consider the maps:
\[ \mathcal{G}^3 \xrightarrow{g_{ij}} \mathcal{G}^2 \]
\[ (l_1, l_2, l_3) \mapsto (l_i, l_j) \quad \text{for} \ 1 \leq i < j \leq 3. \]

Then \( L = g_{12}^{-1}(K) \cap g_{13}^{-1}(K) \cap g_{23}^{-1}(K) \) is closed in \( \mathcal{G}^3. \) Therefore \( H_{\alpha} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \) is closed in \( \mathcal{M}. \) Since \( H_1 \) is the image of \( H_{\alpha} \) via \( p, \) it is a closed subset of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta. \)

Let \( H_{\beta} = \left\{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset; \ l_1 \cap l_4 \cap l_5 \neq \emptyset \right\}. \) Then \( H_{\beta} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{145}^{-1}(L) \) is a closed in \( \mathcal{M} \) and \( H_2^{(2)} = p(H_{\beta}) \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta. \)

Similarly, let \( H_{\gamma} = \left\{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset; \ l_4 \cap l_5 \cap l_6 \neq \emptyset \right\}. \) Then \( H_{\gamma} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{456}^{-1}(L) \) is closed in \( \mathcal{M} \) and \( H_2^{(3)} = p(H_{\gamma}) \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta. \)

\[ \square \]

**Remark 2.3.2.** The argument used to prove the closedness of \( H_2^{(2)}, H_2^{(3)} \) and \( H_1 \) above will be used several times in the rest of the chapter.

**Corollary 2.3.3.** \( H_3 = H_2^{(3)}. \) Consequently \( H_3 \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta, \) irreducible of dimension 17.

**Proof.** By (2.1.7 (ii)), for any \( x \in H_3^{(3)}, \) we have \( X_x \in H_3. \) Conversely, if \( x \in H_3 \) then the corresponding surface \( X_x \) has at least 3 star triples and there exist 2 of them having no line in common. For this, suppose \( X \) has 2 star triples, say \( T_1 \) and \( T_2 \) having one
line in common. Let $T_3$ be another star triple which has one line in common with $T_2$. Then $T_1$ and $T_3$ have no line in common, otherwise this situation contradicts against the fact that the five tritangent planes containing a given line of any non-singular cubic surface in $\mathbb{P}^3$ are different. So $x \in H_2^{(3)}$. The rest of the corollary follows from the theorem. 

**Corollary 2.3.4.** The set $H_1$ generically consists of points corresponding to cubic surfaces with exactly 1 star point.

### 2.4 A study of $H_4$

Recall that $H_4$ is the set of points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least 4 star points. Since $H_4 \subset H_3 = H_2^{(2)}$, this implies that for each $x \in H_4$, the surface $X_x$ has a star-Steiner set. Moreover, if $X_x$ has a star-Steiner $S = \{T_1, T_2, T_3\}$ and another star triple $T$ having 2 lines in common with $S$, then $T$ has all lines in common with $S$. This follows from (2.1.2). Therefore, the set $H_4$ consists of elements in one of the 3 following subsets:

$$H_4^{(4)} = \{ [X] \in H_4 \mid X \text{ has one star-Steiner } S \text{ and another }$$
$$\text{star triple } T \text{ having 3 lines in common with } S \};$$

$$H_4^{(6)} = \{ [X] \in H_4 \mid X \text{ has one star-Steiner } S \text{ and another }$$
$$\text{star triple } T \text{ having 1 line in common with } S \};$$

$$H_4^{(9)} = \{ [X] \in H_4 \mid X \text{ has one star-Steiner } S \text{ and another }$$
$$\text{star triple } T \text{ having no line in common with } S \}.$$ 

### A. A study of $H_4^{(4)}$

By (2.1.5) and up to permutations, we can assume that for each $x \in H_4^{(4)}$, the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ has the star-Steiner set $S = \{(l_{13}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{56}), (P_3\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{13}), (P_2\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{12})\}$. Therefore, the subsets $H_4^{(4)}$, up to permutations, consists of points corresponding to surfaces which possesses $S$ and another star triple in one of the following kinds:

(i) $S$ and $(P_3\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{13})$,

(ii) $S$ and $(\tilde{l}_{12}\tilde{l}_{34}\tilde{l}_{56})$.

We see that the quadratic transformation(234) exchanges $S$ and $(P_3\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{13})$ of kind (i) to

$$(P_3\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{13}), (P_2\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{24}), (\tilde{l}_{5}\tilde{l}_{6}\tilde{l}_{12})$$

and $(\tilde{l}_{13}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{56})$. Moreover, the permutation (23) makes $(P_3\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{13}), (P_2\tilde{C}_1\tilde{l}_{24}), (\tilde{l}_{5}\tilde{l}_{6}\tilde{l}_{12})$ and $(\tilde{l}_{13}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{56})$ correspond to $S$ and $(\tilde{l}_{12}\tilde{l}_{34}\tilde{l}_{56})$, respectively.
2.4. A study of $H_4$

Definition:

$$K_4^{(4)} = \{(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{13} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{56} = \{Q\}; \ l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C_1\};$$

see Figure 2.3.

![Figure 2.3: The configuration for members of $K_4^{(4)}$](image)

Let $D_4^{(4)} = \Theta^{-1}(K_4^{(4)})$, $(L_4)^{(4)} = \Gamma(D_4^{(4)})$. By the argument above, we have $H_4^{(4)} = p(L_4^{(4)})$.

**Definition:** Let $C \subset \mathbb{P}^5$ denote the space parameterizing non-singular conics in $\mathbb{P}^2$. This is an open subvariety of $\mathbb{P}^5$.

**Theorem 2.4.1.** The subset $H_4^{(4)} \subset H_4$ is closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$, irreducible of dimension 16.

**Proof.** We first prove that $K_4^{(4)}$ is irreducible of dimension 9.

Let

$$\mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid C \text{ is a non-singular conic in } \mathbb{P}^2; P_1 \notin C; \ P_2, P_3 \in C; \ P_2 \neq P_3; \ l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C \right\} \subset C \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3,$$

$$\mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{(Q, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_1; \ Q \in l_{13}; \ Q \notin \{P_1, P_3\}\right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathbb{P}^2,$$

$$\mathcal{F}_3 = \left\{(Q, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \mid (Q, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_2; \ \{P_4\} = \overline{P_2Q} \cap C; \ P_5, P_6 \in C; \ l_{56} \cap l_{13} = \{Q\}; \ (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi\right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3.$$

Consider

$$\mathcal{F}_1 \overset{p_1}{\longrightarrow} \mathcal{C}$$

$$([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mapsto [C].$$
Chapter 2. Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

The map $p_1$ is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 2. This implies that $\mathcal{F}_2$ is irreducible of dimension $5 + 2 = 7$. Similarly, the map:

$$\mathcal{F}_2 \xrightarrow{p_2} \mathcal{F}_1$$

$$(Q, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mapsto ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3)$$

is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 1. Therefore $\mathcal{F}_2$ is irreducible of dimension 8. Finally, consider:

$$\mathcal{F}_3 \xrightarrow{p_3} \mathcal{F}_2$$

$$(Q, [C], P_1, \ldots, P_6) \mapsto (Q, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3).$$

The map $p_3$ is surjective and each fiber is naturally isomorphic to $A = \{(P_5, P_6) \in C \times C \mid Q \in l_{56}; P_5 \neq P_6\}$. Consider:

$$A \xrightarrow{h} C$$

$$(P_5, P_6) \mapsto P_5.$$ The map $h$ is surjective and every fiber consists of one point. Therefore $A$ is irreducible of dimension 1. This implies $\mathcal{F}_3$ is irreducible of dimension $8 + 1 = 9$. So is $K_4^{(4)}$, since the projection $\mathcal{F}_3 \twoheadrightarrow K_4^{(4)}$ is an isomorphism.

Next, we prove that the $H_4^{(4)}$ is irreducible of dimension 16. We have the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & L \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
\emptyset & \xrightarrow{} & \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta.
\end{array}$$

This induces

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
D_4^{(4)} & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & L_4^{(4)} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
K_4^{(4)} & \xrightarrow{} & H_4^{(4)}.
\end{array}$$

We shall prove that $D_4^{(4)}$ is irreducible. This implies that $H_4^{(4)} = p \circ \Gamma(D_4^{(4)})$ is irreducible. Hence $H_4^{(4)}$ has dimension $9 + 8 + 15 = 16$.

Let

$$Y = \left\{(\mathcal{P}, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \mid \mathcal{P} = (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in K_4^{(4)}; \right.$$

$$\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4 \text{ are non-zero cubic forms passing through } P_1, \ldots, P_6 \right\} \subset K_4^{(4)} \times (\mathbb{P}^9)^4$$

and

$$U = \left\{(\mathcal{P}, \varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4) \in Y \mid \{\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_3, \varphi_4\} \text{ forms a basis of } \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \right\},$$

where $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ is used as on page 19.

Consider the following commutative diagram:
2.4. A study of $H_4$ 

\[ U \xrightarrow{\text{open}} Y \xleftarrow{\text{closed}} K_4^{(4)} \times (\mathbb{P}^3)^4 \]

where the map $p : K_4^{(4)} \times (\mathbb{P}^3)^4 \rightarrow K_4^{(4)}$ is the projection. The map $Y \xrightarrow{g} K_4^{(4)}$ is surjective and every fiber is isomorphic to $(\mathbb{P}^3)^4$, therefore $Y$ is irreducible. Consequently $U$ is irreducible.

As in the proof of (2.2.1), we see that $D_4^{(4)}$ is isomorphic to an open subset of $U \times \mathbb{P}^3$. So $D_4^{(4)}$ is irreducible.

For the closedness of $H_4^{(4)}$, see the proof of (2.4.5). \(\square\)

B. A study of $H_4^{(6)}$

For convenience, from now on, for any two star triples $T_1, T_2$ of a non-singular cubic surface $X$ such that $T_1$ and $T_2$ do not have any line in common, we denote $T_1 T_2$ for the third star triple of the star-Steiner set determined by $T_1$ and $T_2$. By this notation, we have, $T_1 T_2 = T_3; T_1 (T_1 T_2) = T_2; T_2 (T_1 T_2) = T_1,...$

For any $x \in H_4^{(6)}$, the surface $X_x$ possesses a pair $(S, U)$ where $S = \{T_1, T_2, T_1 T_2\}$ is a star-Steiner set and $U$ is another star triple which has only one line in common with $S$ and we can assume with $T_1$. We can assume that $T_1 = (C_1 P_2 I_{12}); U = (C_1 P_3 I_{13})$. Then the star triple $T_2$, up to permutations, has one of following kinds:

(i) $T_2 = (C_3 P_4 I_{34})$ and then $T_1 T_2 = (I_{14} I_{23} I_{56})$;

(ii) $T_2 = (C_4 P_1 I_{14})$ and then $T_1 T_2 = (C_2 P_1 I_{24})$;

(iii) $T_2 = (C_5 P_4 I_{45})$ and then $T_1 T_2 = (I_{14} I_{25} I_{36})$.

Note that if $T_2$ has form $(C_2 P_1 I_{24})$ or $(I_{i j k l m n})$ then $T_1 T_2$ has the form (i) or (iii).

**Lemma 2.4.2.** Any element of each kind in the above list can be transformed to any other kind in the list by permutations and quadratic transformations.

**Proof.**

If $T_2 = (C_4 P_1 I_{14})$ (kind (ii)) then $T_1 T_2 = (C_2 P_1 I_{24})$ and $U(T_1 T_2) = (I_{14} I_{23} I_{56})$. It is easy to see that $S' = \{U, T_1 T_2, U(T_1 T_2)\}$ together $T_1$ form one of kind (i).

If $T_2 = (C_5 P_4 I_{45})$ (kind (iii)) then $T_1 T_2 = (I_{14} I_{25} I_{36})$, $T_2 U = (I_{14} I_{25} I_{36})$. Under the “action” of the quadratic transformation(356), the star triples $T_2 U$, $T_2$ and $T_1 T_2$ are exchanged with $T_1' = (C_2 P_6 I_{26})$, $T_2' = (C_3 P_1 I_{13})$ and $U' = (C_2 P_3 I_{25})$, respectively. It is easy to see that $S' = \{T_1', T_2', T_1 T_2\}$ together $U'$ form one of kind (i). \(\square\)

Moreover, if any one of kind (i) possesses a pair $S = \{(C_i P_j I_{i j}), (C_h P_k I_{h k}), (I_{i k l j h m}) \}$ and $U = (C_i P_h I_{i h})$ then the action of the permutation $x = (i 2)(j 3)(k 4)(m 5)(n 6)$ let it correspond to the pair $\{(C_1 P_2 I_{12}), (C_3 P_4 I_{34}), (I_{14} I_{23} I_{56}) \}$ and $(C_1 P_3 I_{13})$. 
Definition:

\[ K_4^{[6]} = \{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{14} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{56} = \{S\}; \ l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C_1 \}, \]

see Figure 2.4.

![Figure 2.4: The configuration for members of \( K_4^{[6]} \)](image)

Let \( D_4^{[6]} = \Theta^{-1}(K_4^{[6]}) \) and \( L_4^{[6]} = \Gamma(D_4^{[6]}) \). By the above argument and by (2.1.4), we have \( H_4^{[6]} = p(L_4^{[6]}) \).

**Theorem 2.4.3.** The subset \( H_4^{[6]} \subset H_4 \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \), irreducible of dimension 16.

**Proof.** We prove first that \( K_4^{[6]} \) is irreducible of dimension 9. Let

\[ \mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid C \text{ is a non-singular conic in } \mathbb{P}^2; P_1 \notin C; \right. \]

\[ \left. P_2, P_3 \in C; P_2 \neq P_3; \ l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C \right\} \subset C \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3, \]

\[ \mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \mid ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_1; C \right. \]

\[ \left. P_4 \in C; P_4 \notin \{P_2, P_3\} \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathbb{P}^2, \]

\[ \mathcal{F}_3 = \left\{ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \mid ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in \mathcal{F}_2; \right. \]

\[ \left. P_5, P_6 \in C; l_{56} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{14} = \{S\}; (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^2. \]

Consider

\[ \mathcal{F}_1 \xrightarrow{p_1} \mathcal{C} \]

\[ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mapsto [C]. \]

The map \( p_1 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 2. This implies that \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) is irreducible of dimension \( 5 + 2 = 7 \). Similarly, the map:

\[ \mathcal{F}_2 \xrightarrow{p_2} \mathcal{F}_1 \]

\[ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \mapsto ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \]
is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 1. Therefore $F_2$ is irreducible of dimension 8. Finally, consider:

$$F_3 \xrightarrow{p_3} F_2 \quad (|C|, P_1, \ldots, P_6) \mapsto (|C|, P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4).$$

Then the map $p_3$ is surjective and each fiber is naturally isomorphic to $A = \{(P_5, P_6) \in C \times C \mid S \in l_{56}; P_5 \neq P_6\}$. Consider:

$$A \xrightarrow{h} C \quad (P_5, P_6) \mapsto P_5.$$

Then the map $h$ is surjective and every fiber consists of one point. Therefore $A$ is irreducible of dimension 1. This implies that $F_3$ is irreducible of dimension $8+1=9$. So is $K_4^{(4)}$ since the projection $F_3 \rightarrow K_4^{(4)}$ is an isomorphism.

Next, we prove that $H_4^{(6)}$ is irreducible of dimension 16. The proof is analogous to that of the proof of (2.4.1) when $K_4^{(4)}$ is substituted by $K_4^{(6)}$. Also, for closedness of $H_4^{(6)}$, see the proof of (2.4.5).

**Proposition 2.4.4.** Each $X \in H_4^{(6)}$ has at least 6 star triples, which form 4 star-Steiner sets and each star triple has exactly one line in common with another star triple among the 6 ones above. Hence $H_4^{(6)} \subset H_6$.

**Proof.** By (2.4.2), we can assume that $X$ possesses a pair $\{S, U\}$, where $S = \{T_1 = (C, P_{12})_1, T_2 = (C, P_{13})_3, T_1T_2 = (l_{12}l_{23}l_{56})\}$ and $U = (C, P_{13})_3$.

It is easy to see that $X$ has 2 more star triples, namely: $T_3U = (C, P_{14})_4$ and $U(T_1T_2) = (C, P_{14})_4$. Moreover, they form 4 star-Steiner sets, namely: $\{T_1, T_2, T_1T_2\}, \{T_2, U, UT_2\}, \{U, T_1T_2, U(T_1T_2)\}$ and $\{T_1, UT_2, U(T_1T_2)\}$.

**C. A study of $H_4^{(9)}$**

Recall that $H_4^{(9)}$ is the set of points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces such that each surface has a pair $\{S, U\}$, where $S$ is a star-Steiner set and $U$ is another star triple having no line in common with $S$. We can assume that each cubic surface $X$ corresponding to an element of $H_4^{(9)}$ has the star-Steiner set $S = \{(l_{12}l_{34}l_{56}), (l_{13}l_{24}l_{56}), (l_{15}l_{26}l_{13})\}$. This implies that $U$ has the form $(P_iC_jl_{ij})$. Furthermore, we can assume that $U = (C, P_i)l_{i4}$ by using a suitable permutation. For this,

- (41)(23) if $i = 4, j = 1$;
- (164) if $i = 4, j = 6$ or $i = 6, j = 1$;
- $(kh)(j4)(i1)$ for $k, h \in \{1, \ldots, 6\} - \{i, j, 1, 4\}$ in others.

**Definition:**

$$K_4^{(9)} = \{(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{S_1\}; l_{15} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{36} = \{S_2\}; l_{14} \text{ is tangent to } C_1 \text{ at } P_3\}.$$  

Let $D_4^{(9)} = \Theta^{-1}(K_4^{(9)})$ and $(L_4)^{(9)} = \Gamma(D_4^{(9)})$. By the above argument, we have $H_4^{(9)} = p(L_4^{(9)})$. 

Theorem 2.4.5. The subset $H_4^{[9]} \subset H_4$ is closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ and has two irreducible components of dimension 16.

Proof. We consider the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{D} & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & \mathcal{L} \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
\Phi & \xrightarrow{p} & \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta.
\end{array}
$$

This induces

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
D_4^{[9]} & \xrightarrow{\Gamma} & L_4^{[9]} \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
K_4^{[9]} & \xrightarrow{p} & H_4^{[9]}.
\end{array}
$$

We shall prove that $K_4^{[9]}$ has two irreducible components of dimension 9. Then this implies that the $H_4^{[9]}$ has two irreducible components of dimension 16 (see, for example, the proof of (2.4.1)).

Let

$$
\mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^4 \mid P_i \neq P_j \forall i \neq j; P_i \notin l_{jk} \text{ for } 1 \leq i, j, k \leq 4 \right\}.
$$

$$
\mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, S) \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in \mathcal{F}_1; S \in l_{23}; S \notin l_{23} \cup l_{14} \cup l_{13} \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathbb{P}^2.
$$

$$
\mathcal{F}_3 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6, S) \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, S) \in \mathcal{F}_2; (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi; l_{36} \cap l_{15} \cap l_{24} = \{ S \}; l_{14} \text{ is tangent to } C_1 \text{ at } P_4 \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^2.
$$

First of all, we see that the set $\mathcal{F}_1$ is an open subset of $(\mathbb{P}^2)^4$. Therefore it irreducible of dimension 8. Consider

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_2 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & \mathcal{F}_1 \\
(P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, S) & \mapsto & (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4).
\end{array}
$$

The map $p_1$ is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 1. This implies that $\mathcal{F}_1$ is irreducible of dimension $8 + 1 = 9$. Now, consider

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_3 & \xrightarrow{p_2} & \mathcal{F}_2 \\
(P_1, \ldots, P_6, S) & \mapsto & (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, S).
\end{array}
$$

We prove that this map is $2 : 1$ and the set $\mathcal{F}_3$ consists of two components, each of them is isomorphic to an open subset of $\mathcal{F}_2$. Choose a system of coordinates of $\mathbb{P}^2$ such that $P_1 = (-1 : 0 : 1), P_2 = (1 : 1 : 0), P_3 = (-1 : 1 : 0), P_4 = (0 : 0 : 1)$ and $S = (b : b : 1)$ for $b \in k \cup \{ \infty \}$. By a straight forward computation we easily prove that
2.4. A study of $H_4$

except for a finite number of values of $b$, the fiber of $p_2$ at a given point consists of two distinct points. Moreover, the set $\mathcal{F}_3$ is isomorphic to the set $K_4^{(9)}$.

Finally, we have to show that the subsets $H_4^{(4)}$, $H_4^{(6)}$ and $H_4^{(9)}$ are closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. Repeat the argument and notations used in the proof of the closedness of $H_1$ and $H_2$ in (2.3.1). Consider the following sets:

$$G_4^{(4)} = \{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset; l_1 \cap l_4 \cap l_5 \neq \emptyset; l_2 \cap l_6 \cap l_7 \neq \emptyset \},$$

$$G_4^{(6)} = \{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset; l_1 \cap l_4 \cap l_5 \neq \emptyset; l_6 \cap l_7 \cap l_8 \neq \emptyset \},$$

and

$$G_4^{(9)} = \{ (x, l_1, \ldots, l_{27}) \in \mathcal{M} \mid l_1 \cap l_2 \cap l_3 \neq \emptyset; l_4 \cap l_5 \cap l_6 \neq \emptyset; l_7 \cap l_8 \cap l_9 \neq \emptyset \}.$$

We have

$$G_4^{(4)} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{145}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{267}^{-1}(L) \rightarrow \mathcal{M},$$

$$G_4^{(6)} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{145}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{678}^{-1}(L) \rightarrow \mathcal{M},$$

and

$$G_4^{(9)} = f_{123}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{456}^{-1}(L) \cap f_{789}^{-1}(L) \rightarrow \mathcal{M}.$$

In particular the subsets $H_4^{(4)} = p(G_4^{(4)})$, $H_4^{(6)} = p(G_4^{(6)})$ and $H_4^{(9)} = p(G_4^{(9)})$ are closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. \hfill \Box

**Proposition 2.4.6.** Each cubic surface corresponding to an element of $H_4^{(9)}$ contains at least 9 star points and at least 12 star-Steiner sets.

**Proof.** We can assume that $X$ is isomorphic to the blowing up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at $P = (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in K_4^{(9)}$. We compute all star triples “generated” by the given star triples $(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14})$, $(\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56})$ and $(\tilde{l}_{24} \tilde{l}_{15} \tilde{l}_{36})$ as follows:

$$(1) \quad (\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14}), \quad (2) \quad (\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), \quad (3) \quad (\tilde{l}_{24} \tilde{l}_{15} \tilde{l}_{36}), \quad (4) \quad (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23}), \quad (5) \quad (\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45}),$$

$$(6) \quad (\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_5 \tilde{l}_{25}), \quad (7) \quad (\tilde{C}_6 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{16}), \quad (8) \quad (\tilde{C}_4 \tilde{P}_6 \tilde{l}_{16}), \quad (9) \quad (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35}),$$

and they form 12 following star-Steiner sets:

1. $\{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23})\}$
2. $\{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{l}_{24} \tilde{l}_{15} \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_5 \tilde{l}_{25})\}$
3. $\{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35}), (\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45})\}$
4. $\{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_4 \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{C}_4 \tilde{P}_6 \tilde{l}_{46}), (\tilde{C}_6 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{16})\}$
5. $\{(\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{l}_{24} \tilde{l}_{15} \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45})\}$
6. $\{(\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_5 \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{C}_6 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{16})\}$
7. $\{(\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_4 \tilde{P}_6 \tilde{l}_{46}), (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35})\}$
8. $\{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35}), (\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45})\}$
9. $\{(\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35}), (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23})\}$
10. $\{(\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45}), (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23}), (\tilde{C}_6 \tilde{P}_1 \tilde{l}_{16})\}$
11. $\{(\tilde{l}_{13} \tilde{l}_{26} \tilde{l}_{45}), (\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_5 \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{C}_4 \tilde{P}_6 \tilde{l}_{46})\}$
12. $\{(\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_5 \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23}), (\tilde{C}_5 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{35})\}$
Chapter 2. Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

Remark 2.4.7. The above nine star triples contain all the 27 lines of the surface. Each star triple occurs in 4 of the above 12 star-Steiner sets.
We have \( \dim H_2 = \dim H_2^{(2)} = \dim H_2^{(3)} = 17 \) and \( \dim H_4 = 16 \). We conclude:

Corollary 2.4.8. The subset \( H_2^{(2)} \) respectively \( H_2^{(3)} \) generically consists of point corresponding to cubic surfaces with exactly 2, respectively 3, star points.

2.5 A study of \( H_5 \) and \( H_6 \)

Theorem 2.5.1. \( H_5 = H_6 = H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)} \).

Proof. The inclusion \( H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)} \subset H_6 \subset H_5 \) is trivial by (2.4.4) and (2.4.6). The proof is done if we show that \( H_5 \subset H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)} \). Let \( x \in H_5 \). Since \( H_5 \subset H_4 = H_4^{(4)} \cup H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)} \), we need only consider the case \( x \in H_4^{(4)} \). This means that the corresponding surface \( X_x \) has a pair \( (S,T) \) where \( S \) is a star-Steiner set and \( T \) is another star triple which has all lines in common with \( S \). Let \( U \) be the fifth star triple of \( X_x \). If \( U \) has no line or only one line in common with \( S \) then \( x \in H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)} \). Consider the case \( U \) has all lines in common with \( S \). We can assume that

\[
S = \{(\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{12}), \ (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_4 \tilde{l}_{34}), \ (\tilde{l}_{23} \tilde{l}_{14} \tilde{l}_{56})\},
\]

\[
T = (\tilde{C}_1 \tilde{P}_3 \tilde{l}_{14}) \text{ and } U = (\tilde{l}_{12} \tilde{l}_{34} \tilde{l}_{56}).
\]

Note that at the same time the triple \( (\tilde{C}_3 \tilde{P}_2 \tilde{l}_{23}) \) forms another star point. Our task is now to prove that the three lines \( \tilde{l}_{24}, \tilde{l}_{35} \) and \( \tilde{l}_{16} \) form a star triple, hence \( x \) belongs to \( H_4^{(9)} \). Choose a system of coordinates for \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) such that \( P_1 = (1 : 0 : 0), \ P_2 = (0 : 1 : 0), \ P_3 := (1 : 1 : 1) \) and \( P_4 = (0 : 0 : 1) \). So the conic containing \( P_2, P_3, P_4 \) and being tangent to \( l_{12} \) and \( l_{14} \) at \( P_2 \) and \( P_4 \) respectively is given by \( x_0^2 - x_1 x_2 = 0 \). Moreover, we have \( S_0 = (1 : 1 : 0) \in l_{12} \cap l_{34}, \ S_1 = (1 : 0 : 1) \in l_{14} \cap l_{23} \).

It is easy to see that \( l_{24} = V(x_0) \) and \( S_0 S_1 = V(x_1 + x_2 - x_0) \). Therefore either

\[
P_5 = (1 : \epsilon : -\epsilon^2) \text{ and } P_6 = (1 : -\epsilon^2 : \epsilon)
\]

or

\[
P_6 = (1 : \epsilon : -\epsilon^2) \text{ and } P_5 = (1 : -\epsilon^2 : \epsilon),
\]

where \( \epsilon \) is a primitive cube root of unit. A computation shows that the three lines \( l_{24}, l_{35} \) and \( l_{16} \) have one point in common. \( \square \)

Remark 2.5.2. Later, we will see in (2.7.2) that, in this case, the surface has exactly 18 star points.

2.6 A study of \( H_7, H_8 \) and \( H_9 \)

Recall that \( H_7, H_8 \) and \( H_9 \) are the subsets corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least 7, 8 and 9 star points, respectively.
2.6. A study of $H_7, H_8$ and $H_9$ 33

Lemma 2.6.1. Let $x \in H_4^{(6)}$ and let $T_1, \ldots, T_6$ be the six star triples of $X_x$ determined by the given pair $(S, U)$ as in the proof of (2.4.4). Let $V$ be another star triple of $X_x$.

(i) If $V$ has all line in common with one of 4 star-Steiner sets determined by $\{T_1, \ldots, T_6\}$ then $X_x$ has at least 10 star points and at least 10 star-Steiner sets.

(ii) Otherwise, the surface $X_x$ has at least 18 star points and at least 42 star-Steiner sets.

Proof.

(i) We can assume that:

$$S = \{(\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{2\bar{l}_{12}}), (\bar{C}_3 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{34}}), (\bar{l}_{23\bar{l}_{14\bar{l}_{56}}})\}$$

and $U = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{13}})$. Then $V$ is one of the triples $(\bar{P}_{2\bar{C}_3\bar{l}_{23}})$ and $(\bar{l}_{12\bar{l}_{34\bar{l}_{56}}})$, up to permutations. It is easy to find all star triples determined by $S$, $U$ and $V$.

(a) If $V = (\bar{P}_{2\bar{C}_3\bar{l}_{23}})$ then:

(1) $T_1 = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{2\bar{l}_{12}})$, (2) $T_2 = (\bar{C}_3 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{34}})$,

(3) $T_1 \bar{T}_2 = (l_{23l_{14l_{56}}})$, (4) $U = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{13}})$,

(b) If $V = (\bar{l}_{12l_{34l_{56}}})$ then:

(1) $T_1 = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{2\bar{l}_{12}})$, (2) $T_2 = (\bar{C}_3 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{34}})$,

(3) $T_1 \bar{T}_2 = (l_{23l_{14l_{56}}})$, (4) $U = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{13}})$,

Moreover, we can see that, in fact they are of the same kind. For this, in the case (a), we choose $S' = \{(\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{13}}), (\bar{C}_2 \bar{P}_{4\bar{l}_{24}}), (\bar{l}_{23l_{14l_{56}}})\}$, $U' = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{2\bar{l}_{12}})$ and $V' = (\bar{l}_{13l_{24l_{56}}})$. Then $\{S', U', V'\}$ shows that $X$ has the form of (b). Similarly, in the case (b), we choose $S' = \{(\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{13}}), (\bar{C}_2 \bar{P}_{4\bar{l}_{24}}), (\bar{l}_{23l_{14l_{56}}})\}$, $U' = (\bar{C}_1 \bar{P}_{2\bar{l}_{12}})$ and $V' = (\bar{C}_2 \bar{P}_{3\bar{l}_{23}})$. Then $\{S', U', V'\}$ shows that $X$ has the form as in (a).

The 10 star triples of $X$ are in (a) form 10 star-Steiner sets. They are as follows:

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>{(1), (2), (3)}</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>{(4), (7), (3)}</td>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>{(6), (8), (5)}</td>
<td>8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>{(18), (9), (10)}</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where $(n)$ denotes the star triple numbered $(n)$ in the list (a) of star triples of $X_x$. 
(ii) Recall that, the six star triples of $X_x$ determined by $\{S, U\}$ form 4 star-Steiner sets:

- $\{T_1, T_2, T_1T_2\} = S$;
- $\{U, T_2, UT_2\}$;
- $\{T_1, UT_2, T_1(UT_2)\}$;
- $\{U, T_1T_2, T_1(UT_2)\}$.

Therefore, if $V$ does not satisfy the hypothesis of (i) then $V$ has no line in common with one of the above star-Steiner sets. We can assume $(S, U)$ as in (i) and $V$ has no line in common with $S$. Furthermore, we can assume that $V$ has no line in common with $U$, otherwise, we can choose $S' = S$, $U' = T_2U$ and $V' = V$, then $V'$ has no line in common with $U'$. Therefore, the star triple $V$ is one of the forms $(\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{25})$, $(\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{45})$, $(\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{15})$ and $(\tilde{l}_{65}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{36})$. (Note that there are four other cases for $V$ when $P_5$ is substituted by $P_6$ in the above list, but it is easy to see that they just differ from each other by the permutation $(56)$, which does not change $S$ or $U$).

It is not hard to find all star triples determined by $\{S, U, V\}$ for each case of $V$. Namely,

(a) When $V = (\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{25})$ or $V = (\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{15})$, then the 18 star triples generated by $\{S, U, V\}$ are:

1. $(\tilde{C}_6\tilde{P}_3\tilde{l}_{36})$
2. $(\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_4\tilde{l}_{24})$
3. $(\tilde{l}_{15}\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{46})$
4. $(\tilde{l}_{25}\tilde{l}_{16}\tilde{l}_{34})$
5. $(\tilde{C}_3\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{35})$
6. $(\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{14})$
7. $(\tilde{l}_{13}\tilde{l}_{26}\tilde{l}_{45})$
8. $(\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{15})$
9. $(\tilde{C}_3\tilde{P}_4\tilde{l}_{34})$
10. $(\tilde{l}_{12}\tilde{l}_{36}\tilde{l}_{45})$
11. $(\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{25})$
12. $(\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_3\tilde{l}_{13})$
13. $(\tilde{C}_6\tilde{P}_2\tilde{l}_{26})$
14. $(\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_6\tilde{l}_{56})$
15. $(\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_6\tilde{l}_{46})$
16. $(\tilde{l}_{16}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{35})$
17. $(\tilde{l}_{14}\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{56})$
18. $(\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_2\tilde{l}_{12})$

(b) When $V = (\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{45})$, or $V = (\tilde{l}_{15}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{36})$, then the 18 star triples generated by $\{S, U, V\}$ are:

1. $(\tilde{C}_3\tilde{P}_6\tilde{l}_{36})$
2. $(\tilde{l}_{12}\tilde{l}_{35}\tilde{l}_{46})$
3. $(\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{45})$
4. $(\tilde{l}_{15}\tilde{l}_{24}\tilde{l}_{36})$
5. $(\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_2\tilde{l}_{12})$
6. $(\tilde{l}_{13}\tilde{l}_{25}\tilde{l}_{46})$
7. $(\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_4\tilde{l}_{24})$
8. $(\tilde{C}_6\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{56})$
9. $(\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_2\tilde{l}_{25})$
10. $(\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_3\tilde{l}_{13})$
11. $(\tilde{C}_5\tilde{P}_3\tilde{l}_{35})$
12. $(\tilde{l}_{15}\tilde{l}_{26}\tilde{l}_{34})$
13. $(\tilde{C}_4\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{14})$
14. $(\tilde{l}_{14}\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{56})$
15. $(\tilde{C}_2\tilde{P}_6\tilde{l}_{26})$
16. $(\tilde{C}_3\tilde{P}_4\tilde{l}_{34})$
17. $(\tilde{C}_6\tilde{P}_1\tilde{l}_{16})$
18. $(\tilde{l}_{16}\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{45})$. 
2.6. A study of $H_7, H_8$ and $H_9$

And we can see, in fact, they are of the same kind. For this, in the case of (a), we can choose $S' = S$, $U' = U$ and $V' = (\tilde{C}_4 \tilde{P}_{\phi_4} I_{16})$. Then $\{S', U', V'\}$ shows that $X_x$ has the form (b). Similarly, in the case (b), we choose $S' = S$, $U' = U$ and $V' = (\tilde{C}_2 \tilde{P}_{\phi_4} I_{26})$. Then $\{S', U', V'\}$ shows that $X_x$ has the form of (a). The surface $X_x$ in case (a) has at least (but in fact exactly!) 42 star-Steiner sets. There are 3 star-Steiner sets consisting of all the 27 lines of $X_x$, namely:

\[
\begin{align*}
(12) & \ (13) \ (10) & & \ (2) \ (5) \ (4) \\
(18) : & \ \tilde{C}_1 \ & \tilde{P}_2 \ & \tilde{l}_{12} & & \ (11) : & \ \tilde{C}_2 \ & \tilde{P}_5 \ & \tilde{l}_{25} \\
(1) : & \ \tilde{P}_3 \ & \tilde{C}_6 \ & \tilde{l}_{36} & & \ (9) : & \ \tilde{P}_4 \ & \tilde{C}_3 \ & \tilde{l}_{34} \\
(7) : & \ \tilde{l}_{13} \ & \tilde{l}_{26} \ & \tilde{l}_{45} & & \ (16) : & \ \tilde{l}_{24} \ & \tilde{l}_{35} \ & \tilde{l}_{16} \\
(6) & \ (14) \ (3) & & \ (15) : & \ \tilde{C}_4 \ & \tilde{P}_6 \ & \tilde{l}_{16} \\
(8) : & \ \tilde{P}_1 \ & \tilde{C}_5 \ & \tilde{l}_{15} & & \ (17) : & \ \tilde{l}_{14} \ & \tilde{l}_{56} \ & \tilde{l}_{23}.
\end{align*}
\]

There are 6 star-Steiner sets from the above list, see 2.1.2 (iii). Others are:

1. \{(2), (15), (13)\} 
2. \{(17), (10), (4)\}
3. \{(11), (7), (15)\} 
4. \{(18), (6), (2)\}
5. \{(6), (16), (13)\} 
6. \{(3), (7), (4)\}
7. \{(18), (14), (4)\} 
8. \{(18), (3), (5)\}
9. \{(9), (3), (13)\} 
10. \{(18), (16), (15)\}
11. \{(5), (10), (15)\} 
12. \{(12), (16), (14)\}
13. \{(8), (16), (1)\} 
14. \{(8), (13), (4)\}
15. \{(17), (5), (13)\} 
16. \{(3), (2), (1)\}
17. \{(6), (7), (5)\} 
18. \{(18), (9), (17)\}
19. \{(8), (2), (10)\} 
20. \{(11), (17), (1)\}
21. \{(9), (12), (6)\} 
22. \{(12), (11), (3)\}
23. \{(17), (16), (7)\} 
24. \{(5), (1), (14)\}
25. \{(9), (10), (14)\} 
26. \{(18), (11), (8)\}
27. \{(12), (17), (2)\} 
28. \{(2), (7), (14)\}
29. \{(16), (3), (10)\} 
30. \{(9), (1), (15)\}
31. \{(12), (15), (4)\} 
32. \{(11), (14), (13)\}
33. \{(12), (8), (5)\} 
34. \{(11), (6), (10)\}
35. \{(9), (8), (7)\} 
36. \{(6), (1), (4)\}

\[\square\]

**Definition:** Let $H_{10}^{10}$ and $H_{10}^{18}$ denote the subsets of $H_4^{6}$ consisting of all points as in the cases (i) and (ii) respectively of Lemma 2.6.1.
Remark 2.6.2.

(i) The 10 star triples of each cubic surface $X$ corresponding to an element of $H_{10}^{[10]}$ determined by $\{S, U, V\}$ as in the lemma consist of 15 lines during 27 lines of $X$. Each star triple occurs in two star-Steiner sets of the 10 star-Steiner sets.

(ii) The 18 star triples of each cubic surface $X$ corresponding to an element of $H_{10}^{[18]}$ determined by $\{S, U, V\}$ as in the lemma consist of 27 lines of $X$. Each star triple occurs in seven star-Steiner sets of the 42 star-Steiner sets.

Corollary 2.6.3. $H_7 = H_8 = H_9 = H_{10}^{[10]} \cup H_4^{[9]}$.

Proof. First of all, we have $H_9 \subset H_8 \subset H_7 \subset H_6 = H_4^{[6]} \cup H_4^{[9]}$, see (2.5.1). Therefore $H_7 = (H_7 \cap H_4^{[6]}) \cup (H_7 \cap H_4^{[9]}) = (H_7 \cap H_4^{[6]}) \cup H_4^{[9]}$. On the other hand, it follows from (2.6.1) that $(H_7 \cap H_4^{[6]}) = H_{10}^{[10]} \cup H_{10}^{[18]}$. Moreover, $H_{10}^{[18]} \subset H_4^{[9]}$. The inclusion $H_{10}^{[10]} \cup H_4^{[9]} \subset H_9$ is clear.

Theorem 2.6.4. The set $H_{10}^{[10]}$ is closed in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$, irreducible of dimension 15.

Proof. Let $x \in H_{10}^{[10]}$. By (2.6.1), we can assume that $X_x$ has a set $\{S, U, V\}$, where $S = \{(C_1P_2l_{12}), (C_3P_4l_{34}), (l_{23}l_{14}l_{56})\}$ is a star-Steiner set, $U = (C_1P_3l_{13})$ and $V = (l_{12}l_{34}l_{56})$ are star triples.

Let

$$K_{10}^{(10)} = \{(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{S_2\}; l_{14} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{56} = \{S_1\};$$

$$l_{12} \text{ and } l_{13} \text{ is tangent to } C_1\},$$

see Figure 2.5.

![Figure 2.5: The configuration for members of $K_{10}^{[10]}$](image)

Let $D_{10}^{[10]} = \Theta^{-1}(K_{10}^{[10]})$ and $L_{10}^{[10]} = \Gamma(D_{10}^{[10]})$. Therefore $H_{10}^{[10]} = p(L_{10}^{[10]})$. Consider the diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \overset{\Gamma}{\to} & L \\
\Phi & \downarrow \Theta & \downarrow p \\
& \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta & 
\end{array}$$
This induces
\[ D_{10}^{(10)} \xrightarrow{\Gamma} L_{10}^{(10)} \]
\[ e \xrightarrow{\rho} K_{10}^{(10)} \]
\[ H_{10}^{(10)}. \]

Consider
\[ \mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid C \text{ is a non-singular conic in } \mathbb{P}^2; P_1 \notin C; \right. \]
\[ \left. P_2, P_3 \in C; P_2 \neq P_3; l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C \right\} \subset C \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3, \]
\[ \mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{ (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_1; S_1 \in l_{23}; S_1 \notin \{P_2, P_3\} \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathbb{P}^2, \]
\[ \mathcal{F}_3 = \left\{ (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \mid (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_2; \{P_4\} = \overline{P_1 S_1} \cap C; \right. \]
\[ \left. P_5, P_6 \in C; l_{56} \cap l_{23} = \{S_1\}; l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset; (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3. \]

Consider
\[ \mathcal{F}_1 \xrightarrow{p_1} C \]
\[ ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mapsto [C]. \]

The map \( p_1 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 2. This implies that \( \mathcal{F}_1 \) is irreducible of dimension \( 5 + 2 = 7 \). Similarly, the map:
\[ \mathcal{F}_2 \xrightarrow{p_2} \mathcal{F}_1 \]
\[ (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mapsto ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \]
is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 1. Therefore \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) is irreducible of dimension 8. Finally, consider:
\[ \mathcal{F}_3 \xrightarrow{p_3} \mathcal{F}_2 \]
\[ (S_1, [C], P_1, \ldots, P_6) \mapsto (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3). \]

It is easy to see that the fiber of \( (S_1, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \) consists of one pair determined by:
\[ \{P_1\} = \overline{P_1 S_1} \cap C, \]
\[ \{S_2\} = l_{34} \cap l_{12}, \]
\[ \{P_5, P_6\} = \overline{S_1 S_2} \cap C, \]
with a remark that the 2 points of the pair \( \{P_5, P_6\} \) can be interchanged. Consequently, the set \( K_{10}^{(10)} \) has dimension 8. Use the same argument as in (2.4.1), we see that \( H_{10}^{(10)} \) is irreducible of dimension 15. By the same argument used in (2.3.1), we see that \( H_{10}^{(10)} \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \).
Similarly, we can assume that for each \( x \in H_{10}^{18} \), the surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at one element of the following set

\[
K_{10}^{18} = \left\{(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \mid l_{15} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{36} = \{S\} ; \ l_{14} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{56} = \{S_2\} ; \ l_{12} \text{ and } l_{13} \text{ is tangent to } C_1 \right\}.
\]

Let \( D_{10}^{18} = \Theta^{-1}(K_{10}^{18}) \) and \( L_{10}^{18} = \Gamma(D_{10}^{18}) \). Therefore \( H_{10}^{18} = p(L_{10}^{18}) \).

**Theorem 2.6.5.** The set \( H_{10}^{18} \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) and has two irreducible components of dimension 15.

**Proof.** It is sufficient to prove that \( K_{10}^{18} \) has two irreducible components of dimension 8. Consider

\[
\mathcal{F}_1 = \left\{([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid C \text{ is a non-singular conic in } \mathbb{P}^2 ; P_1 \notin C ; \ P_2, P_3 \in C ; P_2 \neq P_3 ; l_{12}, l_{13} \text{ are tangent to } C \right\} \subset C \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3,
\]

\[
\mathcal{F}_2 = \left\{(S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \mid ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_1 ; S \in l_{23} ; S \notin \{P_2, P_3\} \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_1 \times \mathbb{P}^2
\]

and

\[
\mathcal{F}_3 = \left\{(S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \mid (S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \in \mathcal{F}_2 ; \ \{P_4\} = \overline{P_1S} \cap C ; \ P_5, P_6 \in C ; l_{56} \cap l_{23} = \{S\} ; l_{15} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{36} \neq \emptyset ; (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in \Phi \right\} \subset \mathcal{F}_2 \times (\mathbb{P}^2)^3.
\]

Consider

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_1 & \xrightarrow{p_1} & C \\
([C], P_1, P_2, P_3) & \mapsto & [C].
\end{array}
\]

The map \( p_1 \) is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 2. This implies that \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) is irreducible of dimension \( 5 + 2 = 7 \). Similarly, the map

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_2 & \xrightarrow{p_2} & \mathcal{F}_1 \\
(S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) & \mapsto & ([C], P_1, P_2, P_3)
\end{array}
\]

is surjective and every fiber is irreducible of dimension 1. Therefore \( \mathcal{F}_2 \) is irreducible of dimension 8. Finally, consider

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{F}_3 & \xrightarrow{p_3} & \mathcal{F}_2 \\
(S, [C], P_1, \ldots, P_6) & \mapsto & (S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3).
\end{array}
\]

To see that any fiber of \( (S, [C], P_1, P_2, P_3) \) consists of two points, we choose coordinates of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) such that \( P_1 = (0 : 1 : 0) \), \( P_2 = (-1 : 0 : 1) \), \( P_3 = (1 : 0 : 1) \) and \( P_4 = (0 : 1 : 1) \). Therefore the conic containing \( P_2 \), \( P_3 \) and \( P_4 \), being tangent to \( l_{12} \) and \( l_{13} \) at \( P_2 \) and \( P_3 \) respectively, is determined by \( X^2 + Y^2 - Z^2 = 0 \). Then either \( P_5 = (1 - \epsilon^2 : 2\epsilon : 1 + \epsilon^2) \), \( P_6 = (\epsilon^2 - 1 : -2\epsilon : 1 + \epsilon^2) \) or \( P_6 = (1 + \epsilon : -2\epsilon^2 : 1 - \epsilon) \), \( P_6 = (-\epsilon - 1 : 2\epsilon^2 : 1 - \epsilon) \), where \( \epsilon \) is a primitive cube root of \(-1\).

By the same argument used in (2.3.1), we see that \( H_{10}^{18} \) is closed in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \). \( \Box \)
Proposition 2.6.6. \( H_{10}^{(10)} \cap H_{10}^{(18)} = \emptyset. \)

Proof. Let \( x \in H_{10}^{(18)} \) and assume that \( X_x \) has at least 18 star triples as in page 35:

\[
\begin{align*}
(12) & : \bar{C}_1 \quad \bar{P}_2 \quad \bar{l}_{12} & (13) & : \bar{C}_1 \quad \bar{P}_5 \quad \bar{l}_{25} & (10) & : \bar{C}_4 \quad \bar{P}_6 \quad \bar{l}_{46} \\
(11) & : \bar{C}_2 \quad \bar{P}_3 \quad \bar{l}_{36} & (4) & : \bar{C}_3 \quad \bar{P}_1 \quad \bar{l}_{15} & (4) & : \bar{C}_3 \quad \bar{P}_1 \quad \bar{l}_{15} \\
(6) & : \bar{C}_4 \quad \bar{P}_5 \quad \bar{l}_{25} & (14) & : \bar{C}_4 \quad \bar{P}_6 \quad \bar{l}_{46} & (3) & : \bar{C}_1 \quad \bar{P}_2 \quad \bar{l}_{12}
\end{align*}
\]

If \( x \in H_{10}^{(10)} \) then \( X_x \) has a set \( \{S, U, V\} \), where \( S \) is a star-Steiner set, \( U \) is a star triple with all lines in common with \( S \) and \( V \) is a star triple which has only one line \( l \) in common with \( S \).

Note that, the above 18 star triples consist of 27 lines of \( X_x \) and each line of \( X_x \) does not occur in more than two star triples (2.1.7). Therefore, the star triples in \( \{S, U, V\} \) belong to the above 18 star triples. In particular, the pair \( \{S, U\} \) forms one of the three above matrices. (This means that if three star triples of \( S \) are three rows of a matrix then \( U \) is one of the columns of that matrix. Similarly, if three star triples of \( S \) are three columns of a matrix then \( U \) is one of the rows of that matrix).

Since \( V \) has one line in common with \( S \), the star triple \( V \) is one of the rows or the columns of the matrix formed by \( S \) and \( U \). But \( V \) then has all lines in common with \( S \). This is a contradiction. \( \square \)

Corollary 2.6.7. Each cubic surface corresponding to an element of \( H_{10}^{(10)} \) has exactly 10 star points.

Proof. Let \( x \in H_{10}^{(10)} \). Suppose that \( X_x \) has another star triple \( W \) which does not belong to the set \( L \) of ten star triples determined by a set \( \{S, U, V\} \) as (2.6.2.(i)). The ten star triples of \( L \) consist of 15 lines, each of them occurs in exactly two star triples. Therefore, the three lines of \( W \) do not appear in the 15 lines of \( L \). The set \( \{S, U, W\} \) shows that \( x \) belongs to \( H_{10}^{(18)} \). But by the previous proposition, we have \( H_{10}^{(10)} \cap H_{10}^{(18)} = \emptyset. \) \( \square \)

2.7 A study of \( H_k \) with \( k \geq 10 \)

Theorem 2.7.1. \( H_{10} = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{10}^{(18)} = H_{4}^{(4)} \cap H_{4}^{(6)}. \)

Proof.

(i) We prove that \( H_{10} \subseteq H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{10}^{(18)}. \)

Since \( H_{10} \subseteq H_9 = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{9}^{(9)} \) then \( H_{10} = (H_{10} \cap H_{10}^{(10)}) \cup (H_{10} \cap H_{9}^{(9)}) = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup (H_{10} \cap H_{9}^{(9)}). \) Consider \( x \in (H_{10} \cap H_{9}^{(9)}). \) Since \( x \in H_{9}^{(9)} \), the surface \( X_x \) has at least 9 star triples, which contain all 27 lines of \( X_x \), see (2.4.6). Therefore the tenth star triple \( W \) has all lines in common with three ones, say \( T_1, T_2 \) and \( T_3 \) of the above 9 star triples. There exists another star triple \( T_4 \notin \{T_1, T_2, T_3\} \) such that \( S = \{T_1, T_4, T_1T_4\} \) and \( W \) show that \( x \) belongs to \( H_{4}^{(6)}. \) Then \( \{S, W\} \) and \( T_2 \) show that \( x \) belongs to \( H_{10}^{(18)}. \)

(ii) The inclusion \( (H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{10}^{(18)}) \subseteq (H_{4}^{(4)} \cap H_{4}^{(6)}) \) is clear.
(iii) We prove that \((H_4^{(4)} \cap H_4^{(6)}) \subset H_{10}\). Recall that each cubic surface \(X\) corresponding to an element \(x \in H_4^{(6)}\) has at least 6 star triples \(\{T_1, \ldots, T_6\}\) and each star triple has exactly one line in common with another star triple in \(\{T_1, \ldots, T_6\}\), see (2.4.4). Therefore, if \(x \in H_4^{(4)}\) then the surface \(X\) has another star triple \(U\), which does not belong to the set \(\{T_1, \ldots, T_6\}\). The conclusion follows from (2.6.1).

\[\square\]

**Corollary 2.7.2.** A non-singular cubic surface does not have more than 18 star points. Consequently \(H_k = \emptyset\) for \(k > 18\).

**Proof.** Let \(X\) be a cubic surface corresponding to an element \(x \in H_{18}\). Then \(x \in H_{10} = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{18}^{(18)}\). Since \(H_{10}^{(10)}\) consists of points corresponding to surfaces with exactly 10 star points (2.6.7), this implies that \(x \in H_{10}^{(18)}\). We can assume that \(X\) has the set \(L\) consisting of 18 star points generated by a set \(\{S, U, V\}\) as in (2.6.1). But as we have seen in the proof of (2.6.6), the set \(L\) consists of all 27 lines of \(X\), each line occurs in two star triples. Therefore any star triple of \(X\) belongs to \(L\). This means that \(X\) does not have more than 18 star points.

\[\square\]

**Corollary 2.7.3.** \(H_k = H_{10}^{(18)}\) for \(10 < k \leq 18\).

**Proof.** For any \(10 < k \leq 18\), \(H_k \subset H_{10} = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{18}^{(18)}\). Hence \(H_k = (H_k \cap H_{10}^{(10)}) \cup (H_k \cap H_{18}^{(18)}) = (H_k \cap H_{10}^{(10)}) \cup H_{10}^{(18)}\). But \(H_k \cap H_{10}^{(10)} = \emptyset\) by (2.6.7).

In the rest of this section, we want to study some other properties of \(H_{18} = H_{10}^{(18)}\).

**Proposition 2.7.4.** \(H_{18} = H_4^{(4)} \cap H_4^{(6)} = H_4^{(6)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\).

**Proof.**

(i) \(H_{18} = H_4^{(4)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\).

The inclusion \(H_{18} \subset H_4^{(4)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\) is clear. Suppose \(x \in H_4^{(4)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\) then the surface \(X_x\) has a pair \(\{S', U'\}\), where \(S'\) is a star-Steiner set and \(U'\) is another star triple with no line in common with \(S'\). Moreover, the surface \(X_x\) has a pair \(\{S, U\}\), where \(S\) is a star-Steiner set and \(U\) is another star triple which has all line in common with \(S\). Let \(L\) be the set of 9 star triples generated by \(\{S', U'\}\). Let \(S = \{T_1, T_2, T_3, T_4\}\). Note that any two star triples in \(L\) have no line in common. So there exists one star triple \(V\) in \(L\) which does not have any line in common with \(S\). Then the pair of star-Steiner set \(S_1 = \{T_1, V, VT_1\}\) and \(S\) shows that \(x\) belongs to \(H_4^{(6)}\). So the set \(\{S_1, U, T_2\}\) or \(\{S_1, U, T_2\}\) shows that \(x\) belongs to \(H_4^{(9)}\).

(ii) \(H_{18} = H_4^{(6)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\).

The inclusion \(H_{18} \subset H_4^{(6)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\) is clear. Suppose that \(x \in H_4^{(6)} \cap H_4^{(9)}\). Let \(L\) denote the same set as in the proof of (i). Moreover, since \(x \in H_4^{(6)}\), the corresponding cubic surface \(X_x\) has a pair of star triples \(T_1\) and \(T_2\) such that they have one line in common. Both \(T_1\) and \(T_2\) do not belong to \(L\) by the configuration of \(L\), see (2.4.6). This implies that \(T_1\) has all lines in common with \(L\). Therefore \(x \in H_4^{(4)}\) and the result follows from (i).
2.7. A study of $H_k$ with $k \geq 10$

From (2.5.1), (2.6.3), (2.6.4), (2.6.5), (2.7.1) and (2.7.4) we have the following results:

**Corollary 2.7.5.** The sets $H_{4}^{(4)}$, $H_{3}^{(6)}$ and $H_{3}^{(9)}$ generically consist of points corresponding to cubic surfaces with exactly 4, 6 and respectively 9 star points.

We give a survey of the results obtained in Figure 2.6. In the diagram of the figure:

(i) the number $n$ in the left top of the symbol $nH_k^{(m)}$ denotes the dimension of $H_k^{(m)}$;

(ii) the vectors mean the inclusion relations;

(iii) the symbol $(m)$ indicates that generically in the set $H_k^{(m)}$ the corresponding surface has exactly $m$ star points, see (2.3.4), (2.4.8), (2.6.7), (2.6.1), (2.7.2) and (2.7.5).

Other main results are:

- $H_1$ is irreducible and $\dim H_1 = 18$;
- $H_2 = H_2^{(2)} \cup H_2^{(3)}$ and $\dim H_2 = 17$;
- $H_3 = H_2^{(3)}$ and $\dim H_3 = 17$ and $H_3$ is irreducible;
- $H_4 = H_4^{(4)} \cup H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)}$ and $\dim H_4 = 16$.

![Figure 2.6: A diagram explaining properties of $H_k^{(m)}$.](image-url)
Chapter 2. Non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

- $H_5 = H_6 = H_4^{(6)} \cup H_4^{(9)}$ and dim $H_k = 16$, for $k \in \{5, 6\}$;

- $H_7 = H_8 = H_9 = H_4^{(9)} \cup H_1^{(10)}$ and dim $H_k = 16$, for $k \in \{7, 8, 9\}$ and the union is disjoint;

- $H_{10} = H_{10}^{(10)} \cup H_{10}^{(18)}$ and dim $H_{10} = 15$ and the union is disjoint;

- $H_k = H_{10}^{(18)}$ and dim $H_k = 15$, for $11 \leq k \leq 18$;

- $H_k = \emptyset$ for $k > 18$. 
Chapter 3

On the moduli spaces of non-singular cubic surfaces with star points and compactifications

3.1 Cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities

In this section, we classify all cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities. This gives various classes and we shall see that these classes are locally closed subsets in $\mathbb{P}^1$. We shall determine their codimensions, the number of lines and singular points on the surface corresponding to each element of these classes. Finally, we show the inclusion relationship between the closures of these classes.

Lemma 3.1.1. A line in $\mathbb{P}^3$ which contains two singular points of a given cubic surface lies on the cubic surface.

Proof. This is clear from the fact that a line passing through 2 singular points of a cubic surface has the intersection multiplicity at least 4.

Lemma 3.1.2. A line on a cubic surface with only isolated singularities does not contain 3 singular points.

Proof. Let $X$ be a cubic surface with only isolated singularities. Suppose that there exist 3 singular points lying on a line. Choose a system of coordinates such that 3 singular points are: $P_1 = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1), P_2 = (0 : 0 : 1 : 0), P_3 = (0 : 0 : 1 : 1)$. The surface $X$ is given by an equation:

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$.

We have $\partial F/\partial x_i = x_3\partial f_2/\partial x_i + \partial f_3/\partial x_i$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$ and $\partial F/\partial x_3 = f_2$. Then $$(\partial F/\partial x_i)(P_2) = (\partial f_2/\partial x_i)(P_2) = (\partial f_3/\partial x_i)(P_3) = 0$$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$ and $f_2(P_3) = 0$. Moreover, since $$(\partial F/\partial x_i)(P_3) = (\partial f_2/\partial x_i)(P_3) + (\partial f_3/\partial x_i)(P_3) = 0,$$ then $$(\partial f_2/\partial x_i)(P_3) = 0$$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$. This implies that $$(\partial F/\partial x_i)(P) = 0$$ for any $0 \leq i \leq 3$ and $P = (0 : 0 : a : b)$ on the line $l = V(x_0, x_1)$. This contradicts the fact that $X$ has only isolated singularities.
Lemma 3.1.3. Let $X$ be a cubic surface with only isolated singularities. Let $P_0 \in X$ be a singular point. Suppose that the tangent cone at $P_0$ is a quadric surface. Then there exist at most 6 lines on $X$ through $P_0$. Consequently, there exist at most 7 singular points on the surface $X$.

Proof. Choose coordinates such that $X$ is given as the zeros of

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$ and $P_0 = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$. Let $d = V(a_0x_0 + a_1x_1 + a_2x_2, b_0x_0 + b_1x_1 + b_2x_2)$ be a line on $X$ through $P_0$. Let $P_1 = (c_0 : c_1 : c_2 : 0) = V(x_3) \cap d$. We have $F(P_1) = f_3(P_1) = 0$. It is clear that $F(c_0 : c_1 : c_2 : 1) = f_2(P_1) = 0$. So $P_1 \in V(f_2, f_3, x_3)$. Since $X$ has only isolated singularities and $f_2 \neq 0$, we see that $V(f_2, f_3, x_3)$ is a 0-dimensional variety which contains at most 6 points.

Remark 3.1.4. In fact, the lines through the singular point $P_0$ are completely determined by the intersection points of the curves $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_2)$ and $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_3)$ on the projective plane $H = V(x_3)$. Namely, let $Q = (c_0 : c_1 : c_2 : 0) \in V(f_2, f_3, x_3)$. Then the line $l = \overline{PQ}$ is given by $V(c_0x_1 - c_1x_0, c_0x_2 - c_2x_0)$. So $l \subset X$. Moreover, since $V(f_2)$ is the tangent cone $TC_P$ of $X$ at $P$, we see that the lines through $P$ lie on the tangent cone $TC_P$.

We use the definition of types of isolated singularities as in the sense of V. I. Arnol’d to classify all cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities. About the types $A_i, D_j, E_k, \hat{E}_6$ singularities, we refer to papers of Arnol’d [Ar1] and [Ar2] or the paper of J. W. Bruce and C. T. C. Wall [B-W] for general definitions and properties. In the case of cubic surfaces, the above types of isolated singularities can be characterized as follows.

A singular point $P$ on a cubic surface with only isolated singularities is:

- $A_1$ if the tangent cone $TC_P$ is an irreducible quadric surface;
- $A_2$ if the tangent cone $TC_P$ factors into two different planes such that the intersection line does not lie on the surface;
- $A_i$ for $i = 3, 4, 5$ if the tangent cone $TC_P$ factors into two different planes such that the intersection line lies on the surface and there exist exactly $8 - i$ distinct lines through $P$. Moreover, in the case of $A_5$, the 3 lines through $P$ lie on one component of $TC_P$;
- $D_4$ ($D_5, E_6$) if the tangent cone $TC_P$ is a double plane and there exist exactly 3 (2, 1 respectively) distinct lines through $P$.
- $\hat{E}_6$ if the tangent cone is an irreducible cubic surface.

Remark 3.1.5. Let a cubic surface with only isolated singularities be given by $F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2)$ as before. We see that the above types of isolated singularities can be characterized by rank($f_2$) and the configuration of $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_2, f_3)$. For instance, the point $P$ is $A_1$ singular if rank($f_2$) = 3, is $A_2$ singular if rank($f_2$) = 2 and the singular point of $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_2)$ does not lie on $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_3)$, is $A_3$ if rank($f_2$) = 2 and the singular point of $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_2)$ is a unique double point of $V_{2}\mathcal{Z}(f_2, f_3)$, and so on.
3.1. Cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities

**Definition:** Let $I$ be a homogeneous ideal of $S = k[x_0, \ldots, x_r]$ for $r = 2, 3$ such that $\text{Proj}(S/I)$ consists of one point. This point is called a multiple point if the length of $S/I$ is greater than 1. In particular, this point is called a double (triple) point if the length is 2 (respectively 3).

**Proposition 3.1.6.** Let $X$ be a cubic surface with only isolated singularities given by $F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2)$ as before with $f_2 \neq 0$. Let $P = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1) \in X$. If $X$ has another singular point $Q$ then the line $l = PQ$ intersects the hyperplane $V(x_3)$ at a point which is a multiple point of $V_{2}(f_2, f_3)$. Consequently, the surface $X$ has at most 4 isolated singularities.

**Proof.** We can choose coordinates such that the singular point $Q = (0 : 0 : 1 : 0)$. We have $\partial F/\partial x_i = x_3\partial f_2/\partial x_i + \partial f_3/\partial x_i$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$ and $\partial F/\partial x_3 = f_2$. It is clear that $f_2(Q) = 0$ and $(\partial f_3/\partial x_i)(Q) = 0$ for $i = 0, 1, 2$. This implies that the point $(0 : 0 : 1)$ is a singular point of $V_{2}(f_3)$ and therefore is a multiple point of $V_{2}(f_2, f_3)$.

Conversely, we have:

**Proposition 3.1.7.** Let $X$ be a cubic surface given as in the previous proposition. Suppose that $V_{2}(f_2, f_3)$ contains a $k$-multiple point which is not a singular point of $V_{2}(f_2)$. Then the surface $X$ has another singular point $Q$ which is in type $A_{k-1}$ and lies on the line connecting $P = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$ and the multiple point. Moreover, the point $Q$ is contained in $V(x_3)$ if and only if the multiple point is a singular point of $V_{2}(f_3)$.

**Proof.** Let $R = (a_0 : a_1 : a_2)$ be a multiple point of $V_{2}(f_2, f_3)$. If $V_{2}(f_3)$ is singular at $R$ then $X$ is singular at $Q = (a_0 : a_1 : a_2 : 0) \in V(x_3)$. Consider the case when $V_{2}(f_3)$ is not singular at $R$. Since $R$ is multiple point, we have $((\partial f_2/\partial x_0)(R) : (\partial f_2/\partial x_1)(R) : (\partial f_2/\partial x_2)(R)) = ((\partial f_3/\partial x_0)(R) : (\partial f_3/\partial x_1)(R) : (\partial f_3/\partial x_2)(R))$. Then there exists $b \in k^*$ such that $\partial (f_2/\partial x_i)(R) = b(\partial f_3/\partial x_i)(R)$ for all $i = 0, 1, 2$. This implies that the point $(a_0 : a_1 : a_2 : b)$ is a singular point of $X$, and this point is not contained in $V(x_3)$.

For the type of singularity at $Q$, we refer to [B-W], Lemmas 2 and 3.

**Lemma 3.1.8.** Let $X$ be a cubic surface with only isolated singularities. If $X$ has a singular point in type either $D_4$ or $D_5$ or $E_6$ or $E_7$, then $X$ has only one singular point.

**Proof.** Except for the case of $E_6$ singularity, we can choose coordinates such that $X$ is given by $F = x_3x_0^3 + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2)$ where $f_3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree 3. We have $\partial F/\partial x_0 = 2x_0x_3 + \partial f_3/\partial x_0$, $\partial F/\partial x_i = \partial f_3/\partial x_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ and $\partial F/\partial x_3 = x_0^2$. Suppose that $X$ has another singular point $Q = (0 : a_1 : a_2 : a_3)$. This implies that any point $(0 : a_1 : a_2 : x_3)$ on the line $V(x_0, a_1x_2 - a_2x_1)$ is singular. This is a contradiction. For $E_6$, the result is clear from the definition.

By (3.1.7) and (3.1.8), we conclude that the list of all cases of isolated singularities of cubic surfaces is as follows.

- $A_1$, $2A_1$, $3A_1$, $4A_1$,
- $A_2$, $2A_2$, $3A_2$,
- $A_1A_2$, $2A_1A_2$, $A_12A_2$, $A_1A_3$, $A_1A_4$, $A_1A_5$, 

• $D_4$, $D_5$, $E_6$.

• $E_6$.

**Remark 3.1.9.** This list of singularities can be found in [B-W] where several deep properties, especially for $E_6$, were achieved.

**Definition:** We denote by $iA_1jA_2$ the subset in $\mathbb{P}^9$ corresponding to all cubic surfaces with exactly $i$ singular points of $A_1$ type and $j$ singular points of $A_2$ type.

**Remark 3.1.10.** We are interested in $iA_1jA_2$ since we shall prove later that their points correspond to all semi-stable, singular cubic surfaces (see the next section for the definition of semi-stable). At the moment, we want to know the codimensions of these classes in $\mathbb{P}^9$ as well as the relationship between them and the number of lines on each member. First of all, we need a lemma.

**Lemma 3.1.11.** Let $X_n$ be the projective space of homogeneous polynomials of degree $n$ in two variables. Any subset of $X_n$ consisting of polynomials with solutions corresponding to a given partition of $n$ is irreducible and its dimension equals to the number of distinct solutions. Furthermore, let $\mathcal{A}$ and $\mathcal{B}$ be two such subsets corresponding to given partitions $\mathcal{P}_A$ and $\mathcal{P}_B$ respectively. If $\mathcal{P}_A$ and $\mathcal{P}_B$ can be written $\mathcal{P}_A = (a_1, \ldots, a_r)$ and $\mathcal{P}_B = (b_1, \ldots, b_l, b_{l+1}, \ldots, b_{r+t})$ such that $\sum_{i=1}^r a_i = n$ and $\sum_{j=k}^t b_{jk} = a_j$ for $1 \leq j \leq r$, then $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{B}$.

**Proof.** A homogeneous polynomial of degree $n$ in two variables, as a point of $X_n$, is completely determined by its zeros $P_1, \ldots, P_n$, which are considered as points in $\mathbb{P}^1$. This defines a morphism $\gamma : (\mathbb{P}^1)^n \rightarrow X_n$ which is finite and surjective.

Let $\mathcal{A}$ be the subset of $X_n$ corresponding to the given partition $\mathcal{P}_A = (a_1, \ldots, a_r)$, where $\sum_{i=1}^r a_i = n$. Consider the morphism:

$$
\begin{align*}
(\mathbb{P}^1)^r &\rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^1)^n \\
(P_1, \ldots, P_r) &\rightarrow (P_1, \ldots, P_1, \ldots, P_r, \ldots, P_r). \\
& \text{ } a_1 \text{ times } a_2 \text{ times }
\end{align*}
$$

This is an inclusion. The image $\gamma((\mathbb{P}^1)^r - \Delta)$ is the subset $\mathcal{A}$. So the set $\mathcal{A}$ is irreducible of dimension $r$.

Let $\mathcal{B}$ be the subset corresponding to the partition $\mathcal{P}_B = (b_1, \ldots, b_1, \ldots, b_{r+t})$ such that $\sum_{j=k}^t b_{jk} = a_j$ for $1 \leq j \leq r$. The inclusion $(\mathbb{P}^1)^r \rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^1)^n$ factors through $(\mathbb{P}^1)^r \rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^1)^{\sum_{i=1}^t i} \rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^1)^n$, where

$$
\begin{align*}
(\mathbb{P}^1)^r &\rightarrow (\mathbb{P}^1)^{\sum_{i=1}^t i} \\
(P_1, \ldots, P_r) &\rightarrow (P_1, \ldots, P_1, \ldots, P_r, \ldots, P_r). \\
& \text{ } t_1 \text{ times } t_2 \text{ times }
\end{align*}
$$

The fact $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{B}$ follows immediately. 

**Proposition 3.1.12.** Let $X_1 = i_1A_1j_1A_2$ and $X_2 = i_2A_1j_2A_2$ be two classes such that $i_1 > i_2$.

(i) If $j_1 = j_2$ then $\overline{X_1} \subset \overline{X_2}$. 
3.1. Cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities

(ii) If \( i_1 + j_1 = i_2 + j_2 \) then \( X_1 \supseteq X_2 \).

(iii) The subset \( i\mathcal{A} _1j\mathcal{A} _2 \) has codimension \( i + 2j \).

Proof. Any singular cubic surface with only isolated singularities can be given by a polynomial of the form:

\[
F = x_3 f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),
\]

where \( f_i \) for \( i = 2, 3 \) is a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( i \). The subset \( i\mathcal{A} _1j\mathcal{A} _2 \) consists of elements characterized by \( \text{rank}(f_2) \) and a specific partition of 6. Namely, the set \( i\mathcal{A} _1j\mathcal{A} _2 \) is characterized either by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 3 \) and the partition \((2^{i-1}, j^3, 1^{8-2i-3j})\) of 6 if \( i > 0 \) or by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 2 \), and the partition \((2^i, 3^{j-1}, 1^{9-2i-3j})\) of 6 if \( j > 0 \) plus the requirement that no point of \( V_{\mathcal{A} _2}(f_2, f_3) \) is the singular point of \( V_{\mathcal{A} _2}(f_2) \). This implies that the codimensions of \( \mathcal{A} _1 \) and \( \mathcal{A} _2 \) are 1 and 2 respectively. Moreover, we note that a double point (triple point) of \( V_{\mathcal{A} _2}(f_2, f_3) \) makes the number of distinct points drop 1 (2 respectively). Applying the lemma, we see that the dimension of the set \( i\mathcal{A} _1j\mathcal{A} _2 \) for \( i > 0 \), drops \( (i - 1) + 2j \). Since the codimension of \( \mathcal{A} _1 \) is 1, the codimension of \( i\mathcal{A} _1j\mathcal{A} _2 \) is \( 1 + (i - 1) + 2j = i + 2j \). Similarly, the dimension of the set \( j\mathcal{A} _2 \) drops \( (j - 1) \). Since the codimension of \( \mathcal{A} _2 \) is 2, the codimension of \( j\mathcal{A} _2 \) is \( 2 + 2(j - 1) = 2j \). This proves (iii).

The results in (i) and (ii) follow from the second part of the lemma. Namely:

(i) If \( i_1 > i_2 \) and \( j_1 = j_2 \).

(a) If \( j_1 = j_2 = 0 \). We can assume that \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 3 \) for any element in \( X_1 \) and \( X_2 \). This means that the partitions corresponding to \( X_1 \) and \( X_2 \) are \((2^{i_1-1}, 1^{8-2i_1})\) and \((2^{i_2-1}, 1^{8-2i_2})\) respectively. Since \( i_1 > i_2 \), the second part of the lemma can be applied.

(b) If \( j_1 = j_2 > 0 \). We can assume that \( X_1 \) and \( X_2 \) are characterized by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 2 \) and partitions \((2^{i_1}, 3^{j_1-1}, 1^{9-2i_1-3j_1})\) and \((2^{i_2}, 3^{j_2-1}, 1^{9-2i_2-3j_2})\) respectively. Since \( i_1 > i_2 \), the second part of the lemma can be applied.

(ii) If \( i_1 + j_1 = i_2 + j_2 \) and \( i_1 > i_2 \).

(a) If \( j_1 = 0 \) then \( X_1 \) can be characterized by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 3 \) and the partition \((2^{i_1-1}, 1^{8-2i_1})\). The set \( X_2 \) can be characterized by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 2 \) and the partition \((2^{i_2}, 3^{j_2-1}, 1^{9-2i_2-3j_2})\). With condition \( i_1 = i_2 + j_2 \) in mind, we can check that \( i_1 \neq 4 \) and the second part of the lemma can be applied for this case.

(b) If \( j_1 \neq 0 \). Since \( j_2 > j_1 > 0 \), we can assume that \( X_1 \) and \( X_2 \) are characterized by \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 2 \) and the partitions \((2^{i_1}, 3^{i_1-1}, 1^{9-2i_1-3j_1})\) and \((2^{i_2}, 3^{i_2-1}, 1^{9-2i_2-3j_2})\) respectively. If \( j_2 = 3 \) then \( i_2 = 0 \). This implies that either \((i_1, j_1) = (1, 2)\) or \((i_1, j_1) = (2, 1)\). The result follows from the lemma. If \( j_2 = 2 \) then \( i_1 = 1 \). The partition corresponding to \( X_1 \) is \((2^{i_1}, 1^{6-2i_1})\) with \( i_1 < 3 \). The partition corresponding to \( X_2 \) is \((2^{i_2-1}, 3, 1^{5-2i_2})\). Then the lemma can be applied to this case.

\(\square\)
Remark 3.1.13. We write \( X_1 \rightarrow X_2 \) for the fact \( X_1 \subset X_2 \); the proposition implies the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
A_1 & \rightarrow & 2A_1 & \rightarrow & 3A_1 & \rightarrow & 4A_1 \\
& & A_1A_2 & \rightarrow & 2A_1A_2 & \rightarrow & A_12A_2 \\
A_2 & \rightarrow & 2A_2 & \rightarrow & 3A_2 \\
\end{array}
\]

where classes are in the same column if and only if they have the same codimension.

For the rest of the section, we determine the number of lines on each cubic surface in these classes. We need a lemma.

Lemma 3.1.14. Let \( X \) be a cubic surface with only isolated singularities. Suppose that \( X \) is given by \( F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2) \) as before with \( f_2 \neq 0 \). Let \( d \) be a line on \( X \) passing through \( P = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1) \). Then \( d \) contains another singular point of \( X \) if and only if there exists a hyperplane \( H \) such that \( H \cap X = 2d \cup l \) where \( l \) is a line on \( X \). Furthermore if \( P \in l \) then \( P \) is not an \( A_1 \) singularity.

Proof. Suppose that \( d \) contains another singular point \( Q \); we change coordinates such that \( Q := (0 : 0 : 1 : 0) \) and \( d = V(x_0, x_1) \). Then we have \( f_2 = a_1x_0^2 + a_2x_0x_1 + a_3x_0x_2 + a_4x_1^2 + a_5x_1x_2 \). It is easy to check that \( (0 : 0 : 1) \) is a singular point of \( V_2(f_3) \), see (3.1.7). So \( f_3 = x_2g_2(x_0, x_1) + g_3(x_0, x_1) \), where \( g_i \) for \( i = 2, 3 \) is a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( i \).

Let \( H = V(ax_0 - x_1) \) where \( a \in (k \cup \{\infty\}) \), is a hyperplane containing \( d \). Then \( H \cap X \) is determined by \( x_3x_0[(a_1 + a_2a_0^2 + a_4a_3)x_0 + (a_5a + a_3)x_2] + bx_0^2h_1(x_0, x_2) \) in \( H \). Then there exists \( a \) such that \( a_5a + a_3 = 0 \) and we have the desired result.

Conversely, suppose that there exists a hyperplane \( H \) such that \( H \cap X = 2d \cup l \). We can assume that \( H = V(x_1) \) and \( d = V(x_0, x_1) \). This implies that \( x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, 0, x_2) = x_0^2t_1(x_0, x_2) \) where \( t_1 \in k[x_0, x_2] \). So \( f_2 = a_1x_0^2 + a_1h_1(x_0, x_1, x_2) \) and \( f_3 = x_0^2g_2(x_0, x_2) + x_1h_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) \). If \( f_3 \), as a polynomial in \( k[x_0, x_1, x_2] \), is not singular at \( Q = (0 : 0 : 1) \) then it is easy to check that \( (\partial f_3/\partial x_0)(Q) : (\partial f_3/\partial x_1)(Q) : (\partial f_3/\partial x_2)(Q) \) is a double point of \( V_2(f_2, f_3) \).

Finally, suppose that \( H \cap X = 2d \cup l \) and \( P \in l \). We can assume that \( l = V(x_1, ax_0 + bx_2) \) and \( f_2 = a_1x_0^2 + a_2ax_1 + a_3x_1x_2 + a_4x_1^2 + a_5x_1x_2 \). Since \( H \cap X = 2d \cup l \), we have \( a_1x_3x_0^2 + ax_3x_0x_2 + f_3(x_0, 0, x_2) = ax_0^2(ax_0 + bx_2) \) for \( c \in k^* \) and this implies that \( a_1 = a_3 = 0 \). Then we have rank(\( f_2 \)) \leq 2. \qed
3.1. Cubic surfaces with only isolated singularities

Determining the number of lines on a cubic surface corresponding to an element in $iA_1jA_2$ and their configuration

$A_1$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $A_1$. We know that there exist exactly 6 lines on $X$ through the singular point $P$ of $X$. We note that any line which does not contain $P$ intersects with at least one line through $P$. By the lemma, this line intersects exactly 2 lines through $P$. There are 15 of them. Since the cone containing these 6 lines is irreducible, all of the 15 lines are mutually different. Therefore there exist exactly 21 lines on $X$.

$A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $A_2$. We know that there exist exactly 6 lines on $X$ through the singular point $P$ of $X$. These 6 lines lie on two different components $H_1$ and $H_2$ of the tangent cone at $P$. By the same argument as in the case of $A_1$, we see that $d$ is another line on $X$ if and only if $d$ intersects one of the three lines in $H_1$ and one of the three lines in $H_2$. So, there exist exactly 15 lines on $X$.

$2A_1$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $2A_1$. Let $d$ be the line connecting the two singular points $P_1$ and $P_2$ of $X$. There are 4 other lines through each of $P_1$ and $P_2$. Let $t_1$ be a line containing only one singular point. Then there exists a line $t_2$ through another singular point such that $t_1 \cap t_2 \neq \emptyset$. By the lemma, there is a line $l$ intersecting $d$ such that $2d + l$ is a triple tangent of $X$. This line does not contain any singular point. By the same argument as before, we see that if $m$ is another line on $X$ which does not intersect $d$, then $m$ intersects exactly one pair of the lines through $P_1$ and one pair of the lines through $P_2$. There are 6 such lines. Therefore, there exist exactly $1 + 2.4 + 1 + 6 = 16$ lines on $X$.

$3A_1$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $3A_1$. Denote by $P_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$ the 3 singular points of $X$. Let $d_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 3$ be the line connecting $P_i$ and $P_j$. There exist exactly 2 other lines through each of $P_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$. We denote them by $a_i, b_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$. As in the case of $2A_1$, there exists another line intersecting $d_{ij}$, denoted by $l_{ij}$, such that $2d_{ij} \cup l_{ij}$ is a hyperplane intersection of $X$. The line $l_{ij}$ does not contain any of the singular points and intersects the two lines $a_k, b_k$ for $k \notin \{i, j\}$. Therefore, there exist exactly $3 + 2.3 + 3 = 12$ lines on $X$.

$4A_1$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $4A_1$. Denote by $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 4$ the 4 singular points of $X$. Let $d_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 4$ be the line connecting two points $P_i$ and $P_j$. So the 4 singular points and 6 lines $d_{ij}$ form a tetrahedron in $\mathbb{P}^3$. With the same argument as above, we see that there exists another line $l_{ij}$ intersecting $d_{ij}$ such that $2d_{ij} \cup l_{ij}$ is a hyperplane intersection of $X$. The line $l_{ij}$ does not contain any singular point and intersects the line opposite to $d_{ij}$. So, there exist exactly $6 + 3 = 9$ lines on $X$.

$A_1A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $A_1A_2$. Let $d$ be the line connecting the two singular points $P_1$ and $P_2$ of $X$ where $P_1$ is the $A_1$ singular point. There exist 3 other lines, denoted by $m_1, m_2, m_3$, through $P_1$ and there exist 4 other lines through $P_2$. We know that the tangent cone of $X$ at $P_2$
Chapter 3. On the moduli spaces...

factors into 2 hyperplanes $H_1$ and $H_2$. We can assume that $H_1 \cap X = 2d \cup l$, where $l$ is one of the 4 other lines through $P_2$; the plane $H_2$ contains the other 3 lines, which are denoted by $n_1, n_2, n_3$. The line $l$ does not intersect any line of $m_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$. Each of the lines $m_1, m_2, m_3$ through $P_1$ intersects one of the lines $n_1, n_2, n_3$ through $P_2$. Finally, there exists another line $l_{ij}$ intersecting $m_i$ and $m_j$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 3$. The line $l_{ij}$ intersects $l$ and one of the lines $n_1, n_2, n_3$. So, there exist exactly $1 + 3 + 4 + 3 = 11$ lines on $X$.

$2A_1A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $2A_1A_2$. Let $P_1, P_2$ be the two $A_1$ singularities and $Q$ be the $A_2$ singularity of $X$. There are 3 lines connecting each pair of the 3 singular points. There exists exactly one other line through each of $P_1, P_2$ and there exist exactly 2 other lines through $Q$. There exists another line intersecting the two lines through $Q$ and meeting the line connecting $P_1, P_2$. So, there exist exactly $3 + 1 + 1 + 2 + 1 = 8$ lines on $X$.

$2A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $2A_2$. Let $d$ be the line intersecting the two singular points $P_1$ and $P_2$ of $X$. One component of the tangent cone at $P_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ intersects $X$ at $3d$. The second component contains the 3 other lines on $X$ through $P_i$. Each line through $P_1$ different from $d$ intersects a line through $P_2$ and different from $d$. There are no other lines. So, there exist exactly $1 + 3 + 3 = 7$ lines on $X$.

$A_12A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $A_12A_2$. Let $Q_1, Q_2$ be two $A_2$ singularities of $X$. There are 3 lines connecting the 3 singular points. There exists exactly one other line $l_i$ through $Q_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ and there are no other lines through the $A_1$ singular point. The two lines $l_1$ and $l_2$ intersect. There are no other lines. So there exist exactly $3 + 1 + 1 = 5$ lines on $X$.

$3A_2$. Let $X$ be the cubic surface corresponding to an element of $3A_2$. There exist 3 lines connecting three singular points of $X$. Let $d$ be one of these 3 lines. Then one component of the tangent cone at a singular point on $d$ intersects $X$ at $3d$. It is clear that there are no other lines on $X$. So there exist exactly 3 lines on $X$.

3.2 Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces

In this section, we study the natural action of the projective general linear group $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^3$, the parameterizing space of cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$. We determine stable, semi-stable cubic surfaces in the sense of the geometric invariant theory and study the correspondent quotient spaces.

A. Linear actions of reductive groups on projective varieties

We describe briefly basic fundamentals of the geometric invariant theory. In this subsection, as well as through this section, we use mainly definitions and properties from the book by P. E. Newstead [N] and the book by D. Mumford [GIT].

**Definition:** A linear action of an algebraic group $G$ on the affine space $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}$ is an action induced by a morphism of algebraic groups $G \rightarrow \text{GL}(n+1)$ and the natural
3.2. Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces

action of $\text{GL}(n + 1)$ on $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}$. If the group morphism $\text{G} \longrightarrow \text{GL}(n + 1)$ is an injective then $G$ is called a linear algebraic group.

**Example 8.** The groups $\text{SL}(n)$, $\text{PGL}(n)$ are linear algebraic groups. The fact that $\text{SL}(n) \hookrightarrow \text{GL}(n)$ is clear. We show that $\text{PGL}(n) \hookrightarrow \text{GL}(n^2)$. Consider the action of $\text{GL}(n)$ on the linear space of $n \times n$ matrices $M_n$ defined by

$$\text{GL}(n) \times M_n \longrightarrow M_n, \quad (A, M) \mapsto AMA^{-1}.$$

This defines a morphism $\phi : \text{GL}(n) \rightarrow \text{GL}(M_n)$ where $\text{GL}(M_n)$ is the algebraic group of linear automorphisms of the vector space $M_n$.

We see that $\text{Ker}(\phi) \cong G_m^1$, where $G_m^1$ is the 1-dimensional torus. It is clear that

$$\text{GL}(n)/\text{Ker}(\phi) = \text{GL}(n)/G_m^1 \cong \text{PGL}(n).$$

Hence we get an injective homomorphism: $\text{PGL}(n) \hookrightarrow \text{GL}(M_n) \cong \text{GL}(n^2)$.

**Definition:** A linearization of an action of an algebraic group $G$ on a projective variety $X$ in $\mathbb{P}^n$ is a linear action of $G$ on $\mathbb{A}^{n+1}$ which induces the given action of $G$ on $X$.

**Definition:** A linear action of an algebraic group $G$ on a projective variety $X$ in $\mathbb{P}^n$ is an action of $G$ together a linearization of this action.

**Definition:** The maximal connected normal solvable subgroup of a linear algebraic group $G$ is called the radical of $G$. A linear algebraic group is called reductive if its radical is a torus (i.e. isomorphic to $(G_m^r) = (k^*)^r$ for some integer $r$).

**Remark 3.2.1.**

(i) In fact, the radical of a connected linear algebraic group $G$ is the identity component of the intersection of all Borel subgroups of $G$ (see [B], 11.12). Recall that a subgroup of a connected linear algebraic group is said to be Borel if it is a maximal connected solvable subgroup. In $\text{GL}(n + 1)$, any Borel subgroup is isomorphic to the subgroup of upper triangular matrices ([Sp], 7.2.11) and therefore is isomorphic to the subgroup of lower triangular matrices. This implies that the radical of $\text{GL}(n + 1)$ is the diagonal group $\mathbb{D}_{n+1}$. So $\text{GL}(n + 1)$ is reductive. Since $\text{SL}(n + 1)$ (PGL($n$) respectively ) is a normal connected subgroup (quotient, respectively) of $\text{GL}(n+1)$, the group $\text{SL}(n+1)$ (PGL($n$), respectively ) is a reductive group (see [B], 11.14).

(ii) There are the concepts of linear reductive group and geometric reductive group. In the case of characteristic $0$, they coincide with the concept of reductive group. We refer the reader, who is interested in these topics, to [N], chapter 3, §1, or [N-M].

**Definition:** Let $X$ be a projective variety in $\mathbb{P}^n$. For a given linear action of a reductive group $G$ on $X$, a point $x \in X$ is called:

- semi-stable if there exists an invariant homogeneous polynomial $f \in k[x_0, \ldots, x_n]$ of positive degree such that $f(x) \neq 0$;
• **stable** if it is semi-stable and \( \dim \mathcal{O}(x) = \dim(G) \) and the induced action of \( G \) on \( X_f \) is closed, where \( \mathcal{O}(x) \) is the orbit of \( x \).

Let \( X^{ss}, X^s \) denote the set of semi-stable (stable) points of \( X \) with respect to the action of \( G \).

**Remark 3.2.2.** The definition of “stable” corresponds to Mumford’s “properly stable” (see [GIT], Definition 1.8), where he used the notation \( X^s_0 \) for this set.

**Lemma 3.2.3.** *For a linear action of an reductive group on a projective variety \( X \), the subsets \( X^{ss} \) and \( X^s \) are open in \( X \).*

**Proof.** See [N], 3.13.

**Definition:** (Categorical quotient, good quotient and geometric quotient).

(i) Let \( G \) be an algebraic group acting on a variety \( X \). A categorical quotient of \( X \) by \( G \) is a pair \((Y, \phi)\) consisting of a variety \( Y \) and a morphism \( \phi : X \rightarrow Y \) satisfying:

   (a) \( \phi \) is \( G \)-invariant,

   (b) for any variety \( Z \) and a \( G \)-invariant morphism \( \psi : X \rightarrow Z \), there exists uniquely a morphism \( \chi : Y \rightarrow Z \) such that \( \chi \cdot \phi = \psi \).

(ii) Let \( G \) be an algebraic group acting on a variety \( X \). A good quotient of \( X \) by \( G \) is a pair \((Y, \phi)\) consisting of a variety \( Y \) and an affine morphism \( \phi : X \rightarrow Y \) satisfying:

   (a) \( \phi \) is \( G \)-invariant,

   (b) \( \phi \) is surjective,

   (c) if \( U \) is open in \( Y \) then \( \phi^* : \mathcal{O}_Y(U) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_X(\phi^{-1}(U)) \) is an isomorphism of \( \mathcal{O}_Y(U) \) onto \( (\mathcal{O}_X(\phi^{-1}(U)))^G \),

   (d) if \( W \) is a closed invariant subset of \( X \), then \( \phi(W) \) is closed,

   (e) if \( W_1, W_2 \) are disjoint closed invariant subsets of \( X \) then \( \phi(W_1) \cap \phi(W_2) = \emptyset \).

(iii) The pair \((Y, \phi)\) is called a geometric quotient if it is a good quotient and for any \( y \in Y \) the set \( \phi^{-1}(y) \) consists of a single orbit.

**Remark 3.2.4.** A good quotient is a categorical quotient (see [N], 3.11). In fact, the conditions (a), (c), (d) and (e) imply that \((Y, \phi)\) is a categorical quotient (see [GIT], Chapter 0, §2.(6)).

**Theorem 3.2.5.** *Let \( X \) be a projective variety in \( \mathbb{P}^n \). For any linear action of a reductive group \( G \) on \( X \):

   (i) there exists a good quotient \((Y, \phi)\) of \( X^{ss} \) by \( G \) and \( Y \) is projective;*

   (ii) there exists an open subset \( Y^s \) of \( Y \) such that \( \phi^{-1}(Y^s) = X^s \) and \((Y^s, \phi)\) is a geometric quotient of \( X^s \).*
3.2. Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces

(iii) for $x_1, x_2 \in X^{ss}$,
\[
\phi(x_1) = \phi(x_2) \iff \mathcal{O}(x_1) \cap \mathcal{O}(x_2) \cap X^{ss} \neq \emptyset;
\]
(iv) for $x \in X^{ss}$,
\[
x \text{ is stable } \iff \dim \mathcal{O}(x) = \dim G \text{ and } \mathcal{O}(x) \text{ is closed in } X^{ss}.
\]

Proof. See [N], 3.14.

Proposition 3.2.6. The concept of good quotient and geometric quotient are local with respect to $Y$, i.e:

(i) if $(Y, \phi)$ is a good (geometric) quotient of $X$ by $G$ and $U$ is open in $Y$ then $(U, \phi)$ is a good (geometric) quotient of $\phi^{-1}(U)$ by $G$.

(ii) if $\phi : X \to Y$ is a morphism and $\{U_i\}$ is an open covering of $Y$ such that $(U_i, \phi)$ is a good (geometric) quotient of $\phi^{-1}(U_i)$ by $G$ for all $i$, then $(Y, \phi)$ is a good (geometric) quotient of $X$ by $G$.

Proof. See [N], 3.10.

Proposition 3.2.7. Suppose that for a given moduli problem, there exists a family $U$ parameterized by $X$ with local universal property. Suppose further that an algebraic group $G$ acts on $X$ in such a way that $U_{x_1} \sim U_{x_2}$ if and only if $x_1$ and $x_2$ lie in the same orbit of this action. Then

(i) any coarse moduli space is a categorical quotient of $X$ by $G$;

(ii) a categorical quotient $(Y, \phi)$ of $X$ by $G$ is a coarse moduli space if and only if for any $y \in Y$, the set $\phi^{-1}(y)$ consists of one single orbit.

Proof. See [N], 2.13.

B. The action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$

We consider the natural action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$, the parameterizing space of cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$. Although this action is not linear, we see that the definitions of semi-stability and stability are well-defined. For this, we lift the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ to the natural action of $\text{SL}(4)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$ induced by the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$. It is clear that the action of $\text{SL}(4)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$ is linear. Since the natural morphism $\text{SL}(4) \to \text{PGL}(3)$ is surjective with a finite kernel and the set of invariant homogeneous polynomials as well as the orbit of any point in $\mathbb{P}^{19}$ with respect to these actions are the same, we can view semi-stable (stable) points w.r.t. the action of $\text{SL}(4)$ are semi-stable (stable) points w.r.t. the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$. Moreover, we have:
Proposition 3.2.8. The action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^9$ has all properties (i) – (iv) as in Theorem 3.2.5.

Proof. It is clear that the action of $\text{SL}(4)$ on $\mathbb{P}^9$ satisfies the hypothesis of Theorem 3.2.5. The result follows when we look at the definitions of good quotient and geometric quotient and keep in mind that the set of invariant homogeneous polynomials, the orbit of any point in $\mathbb{P}^9$, the set of semi-stable, stable points w.r.t the actions of $\text{SL}(4)$ and $\text{PGL}(3)$ are the same.

In particular, their quotient spaces are the same. □

Corollary 3.2.9. The quotient space $\text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^9)^s$ is a projective variety. The varieties $\text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^9)^s$ and $M := \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta)$ are coarse moduli spaces. Moreover, the latter is affine but not a fine moduli space.

Proof. The first two conclusions follow immediately from the previous proposition and (3.2.7). Moreover $\text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta)$ is affine since $\mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta$ is affine and the discriminant defining $\Delta$ is an invariant homogeneous polynomial. We prove that $M = \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^9 - \Delta)$ is not a fine moduli space.

Consider 2 cubic surfaces in $\mathbb{P}^3$ given by $C_1 = V(x_0^3 + x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3)$ and $C_2 = (tx_0^3 + x_1^3 + x_2^3 + x_3^3)$ where $t \in \mathbb{Q}(\omega)$ for $\omega$ is the primitive cube root of unity. We can choose $t$ in such a way that $t \notin (\mathbb{Q}(\omega))^3$. The 27 lines of $C_1$ are given by (see [Mul], p. 177):

$$
x_0 + \omega^i x_1 = x_2 + \omega^i x_3 = 0
$$

for $0 \leq i, j \leq 2$.

Similarly, the 27 lines of $C_2$ are given by:

$$
\sqrt[3]{t} x_0 + \omega^i x_1 = x_2 + \omega^i x_3 = 0
$$

for $0 \leq i, j \leq 2$.

If $C_1$ and $C_2$ are isomorphic over $\mathbb{Q}(\omega)$, each line of $C_1$ is isomorphic to some line of $C_2$ over $\mathbb{Q}(\omega)$. Since the lines of $C_1$ are defined over $\mathbb{Q}(\omega)$ but the lines of $C_2$ are not, the surfaces $C_1$ and $C_2$ are not isomorphic over $\mathbb{Q}(\omega)$.

But it is easy to see that they are isomorphic over $\mathbb{Q}(\omega, \sqrt[3]{t})$. (For example, take the change of coordinates $\xi_0 = \sqrt[3]{t} x_0, \xi_i = x_i$, for $i = 1, 2, 3$, then $C_2$ is defined by the same equation as $C_1$).

Now the situation follows from the fact:

Lemma 3.2.10. Suppose that $M$ is a moduli space and $X_1, X_2$ are two objects defined over a field $K$. If there exists a field extension $K \subset L$ such that $X_1 \not\cong_K X_2$ but $X_1 \cong_L X_2$, then $M$ is not a fine moduli space.

(Proof of the lemma). Suppose that $M$ is a fine moduli space. The family $[X_i]$ for $i = 1, 2$ over $\text{Spec}(K)$ defines a morphism $\phi_i : \text{Spec}(K) \rightarrow M$. The families of $X_1$ and $X_2$ are the same over $\text{Spec}(L)$, so they define the same morphism $\phi' : \text{Spec}(L) \rightarrow M$ such that the diagram
3.2. Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces

\[ \text{Spec}(K) \xrightarrow{\phi_1} M \xrightarrow{\phi_2} \text{Spec}(L) \]

commutes. Let \( y \in M \) be the image of these morphisms in \( M \). The above diagram corresponds to the following commutative diagram:

\[ O_{M,y} \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} K \xrightarrow{\varphi_2} L \]

where \( \varphi_1, \varphi_2 \) and \( \varphi' \) are homomorphisms determined by \( \phi_1, \phi_2 \) and \( \phi' \) respectively. Note that the map \( K \rightarrow L \) is the inclusion. This implies that \( \varphi_1 = \varphi_2 \) and \( X_1 \cong X_2 \) over \( K \). Contradiction!

\[ \square \]

C. Semi-stable and stable cubic surfaces

In this subsection, we give explicitly the sets of semi-stable and stable points of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) under the action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \). To do so, we first state a powerful criterion of stability originally considered by D. Hilbert and improved by D. Mumford and C. S. Seshadri. A complete description concerning to this criterion can be found in [GIT], Chapter 2, §1 or in [N], Chapter 4, §2. Secondly, we apply this criterion to find out all semi-stable and stable points in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \).

C.1. A criterion of stability

**Definition:** An 1-parameter subgroup (1-PS) of an algebraic group \( G \) is a non-trivial homomorphism of algebraic groups \( \lambda : k^* \rightarrow G \).

Let \( G \) be a reductive group acting linearly on a projective variety in \( \mathbb{P}^n \). An 1-PS of \( G \) induces a linear action of \( k^* \) on \( k^{n+1} \). A linear action of \( k^* \) on \( k^{n+1} \) can be diagonalized ([B], 4.6). In other words, there exists a basis \( \{e_0, \ldots, e_n\} \) of \( k^{n+1} \) and there exist integers \( r_i \) for \( 0 \leq i \leq n \) such that \( \lambda(t) e_i = t^{r_i} e_i \).

Let \( x \in X \). Let \( \hat{x} \in \mathbb{A}^{k+1} \) be a point over \( x \). Then \( \hat{x} = \sum_{i=0}^{n} \hat{x}_i e_i \). Let

\[ \mu(x, \lambda) = \max \{-r_i \mid \hat{x}_i \neq 0\}. \]

**Theorem 3.2.11.** Let \( G \) be a reductive group acting linearly on a projective variety in \( \mathbb{P}^n \). Then a point \( x \in X \) is:

- semi-stable \( \Leftrightarrow \mu(x, \lambda) \geq 0 \) for every 1-PS \( \lambda \) of \( G \),
- stable \( \Leftrightarrow \mu(x, \lambda) > 0 \) for every 1-PS \( \lambda \) of \( G \).
Chapter 3. On the moduli spaces...

Proof. See [GIT], Theorem 2.1 or [N], Theorem 4.9.

In our case, we have the action of $\text{SL}(4)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$. Any 1-PS $\lambda$ of $\text{SL}(4)$ conjugates to one of the form:

$$
\lambda(t) = \begin{pmatrix}
  t^a & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & t^b & 0 & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & t^c & 0 \\
  0 & 0 & 0 & t^d
\end{pmatrix}
$$

(3.1)

where $a + b + c + d = 0$ and $(a, b, c, d) \in (\mathbb{Z}^4)^*$. The theorem above can be rephrased:

**Theorem 3.2.12.** Consider the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$. A point $x \in \mathbb{P}^{19}$ is semi-stable (respectively stable) if $\mu(gx, \lambda) \geq 0$ (respectively $> 0$) for every $g \in \text{PGL}(3)$ and for every 1-PS of the form (3.1).

Note that for a point $x \in \mathbb{P}^{19}$ given by a cubic form:

$$
\sum_{i+j+k+l=3} a_{ijkl} x_i x_j x_k x_l,
$$

we have

$$
\mu(x, \lambda) = \max\{ai + bj + ck + dt \mid a_{ijkl} \neq 0\},
$$

(3.2)

where $\lambda$ is given in form (3.1).

**C.2. Semi-stable and stable cubic surfaces**

**Lemma 3.2.13.** The set $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ is contained in $(\mathbb{P}^{19})^s$.

Proof. In fact, this is just a particular case of [GIT], Proposition 4.2. The result follows from the fact that the discriminant $D$ defining $\Delta$ is an invariant homogeneous polynomial and the stabilizer of any $x \in \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ is finite.

We consider the case of singular cubic surfaces. The main result of this subsection is the following theorem.

**Theorem 3.2.14.** On the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$, we have:

(i) The subset of stable points consists of points in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ and those of types $i\mathcal{A}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 4$.

(ii) The subset of semi-stable points consists of points in $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ and all those of types $i\mathcal{A}_i j\mathcal{A}_2$ for $2i + 3j \leq 9$, $i \leq 4$ and $(i, j) \neq (3, 1)$.

(See the definition of $i\mathcal{A}_i j\mathcal{A}_2$ in the previous section).

Proof.

a) Suppose that there exists an element $x \in i\mathcal{A}_i$ for some $0 \leq i \leq 4$, which is not stable. This means that there exists an 1-PS $\lambda$ of $\text{SL}(4)$ in the form (3.1) such that
3.2. Stable and semi-stable cubic surfaces

\[ \mu(x, \lambda) \leq 0. \] As we know, the corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) can be given by a homogeneous polynomial:

\[ F = x_3 f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2), \]

where \( f_i \) for \( i = 2, 3 \) is a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( i \) and \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 3 \). We can choose coordinates such that \( f_2 = x_1^2 - x_0 x_2 \) and \( f_3 = a_0 x_0^3 + a_1 x_0^2 x_1 + a_2 x_0 x_1^2 + a_3 x_1^3 + a_4 x_1^2 x_2 + a_5 x_1 x_2^2 + a_6 x_2^3 \) (see [B-W], p. 248). So we can write:

\[ F = x_3 (x_1^2 - x_0 x_2) + a_0 x_0^3 + a_1 x_0^2 x_1 + a_2 x_0 x_1^2 + a_3 x_1^3 + a_4 x_1^2 x_2 + a_5 x_1 x_2^2 + a_6 x_2^3. \]

Moreover, we can assume that \( Q = (0 : 0 : 1 : 0) \in V(f_2, f_3, x_3) \) and in the case the surface has more than one singular point, the point \( Q \) is a multiple point. Since \( x \in i \mathcal{A}_1 \), we have \( a_4 \neq 0 \). From the formula (3.2) for computing \( \mu(x, \lambda) \) we have values \( 2b + d, a + c + d \) and \( 2b + c \) corresponding to monomials \( x_3 x_1^2, x_0 x_2 x_3 \) and \( x_1^2 x_2 \), respectively, where \( (a, b, c, d) \in (\mathbb{Z}^4)^* \) and \( a + b + c + d = 0 \). Since \( \mu(x, \lambda) \leq 0 \), all values \( 2b + d, a + c + d \) and \( 2b + c \) are not positive. If \( a_0 \neq 0 \), then we have \( a \leq 0 \) also. Since \( a + c + d = -b \leq 0 \), then \( b \geq 0 \). We have \( 2b + d + 2b + c = 4b + c + d = 4b - a + a + c + d = 3b - a \leq 0 \). This implies that \( a = b = 0 \). But this forces \( c = d = 0 \) also. Contradiction!

Suppose that \( a_0 = 0 \). If \( a_1 \neq 0 \), then \( 2a + b \leq 0 \). Then we have \( 2b + d + 2b + c + 2a + b = 5b + a + (a + b + c) = 4b + a \leq 0 \). This implies that \( 8b + a + c + d = 7b \leq 0 \). So \( b = 0 \) and this implies that \( a = c = d = 0 \). Contradiction!

If \( a_0 = a_1 = 0 \), then \( a_2 \neq 0 \). Otherwise, the point \( (1 : 0 : 0) \) is a triple point of \( V_{2}(f_2, f_3) \). Since \( a_2 \neq 0 \), we have \( 2b + a \leq 0 \). Then we have \( 2b + d + 2b + c + 2b + a = 6b + (a + b + c) = 5b \leq 0 \). This implies \( b = 0 \) and similarly we have a contradiction. Therefore, every element of \( i \mathcal{A}_1 \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 4 \) is stable.

b) Next, we prove that if \( x \in i \mathcal{A}_j, j \mathcal{A}_2 \) for \( j > 0 \), then \( x \) is semi-stable but not stable. We know that \( x \) can be given by a homogeneous polynomial:

\[ F = x_3 f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2), \]

where \( f_i \) for \( i = 2, 3 \) is a homogeneous polynomial of degree \( i \) and \( \text{rank}(f_2) = 2 \) and the singular point of \( V_{2}(f_2) \) does not lie on \( V_{2}(f_3) \). We can choose coordinates such that (see [B-W], p. 249) \( f_2 = x_0 x_1 \) and

\[ f_3 = x_0 (a_0 x_0^2 + a_1 x_0 x_2 + a_2 x_2^2) + x_1 (a_3 x_1^2 + a_4 x_1 x_2 + a_5 x_2^2) + a_6 x_2^3, \]

where \( a_6 \neq 0 \). So we can write:

\[ F = x_3 x_0 x_1 + x_0 (a_0 x_0^2 + a_1 x_0 x_2 + a_2 x_2^2) + x_1 (a_3 x_1^2 + a_4 x_1 x_2 + a_5 x_2^2) + a_6 x_2^3. \]

Suppose that \( x \) is not semi-stable. Then there exists an 1-PS \( \lambda \) of \( \text{SL}(4) \) such that \( \mu(x, \lambda) < 0 \). As in the above case, by the formula (3.2), this means that there exists a 4-tuple \( (a, b, c, d) \in (\mathbb{Z}^4)^* \) such that \( a + b + c + d = 0 \) and \( a + b + d \leq 0 \) and \( 3c \leq 0 \). But it is easy to see that there is no such 4-tuple. So \( x \) is semi-stable.

We prove that \( x \) is not stable. It is enough to find a 4-tuple \( (a, b, c, d) \in (\mathbb{Z}^4)^* \) such that \( a + b + c + d = 0 \) and all values \( a + b + d, 3a, 2a + c, a + 2c, 3b, 2b + c, b + 2c \) and \( 3c \) are not positive. We can choose \( b = c = 0, a = -1 \) and \( d = 1 \).
c) Finally, let $x$ be a point corresponding to a singular cubic surface. Suppose that $x$

does not belong to any $A_i A_j A_k$ for $2i + 3j \leq 9$, $i \leq 4$ and $(i, j) \neq (3, 1)$. We prove that $x$

is not semi-stable. It is enough to find an 1-PS $\lambda$ of $SL(4)$ such that $\mu(x, \lambda) < 0$.

($c_1$) The case that the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is a reducible cubic surface. We

can assume that $X_x$ is given by a cubic form $F = x_3 f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2, x_3)$ where

$f_2$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree 2. The monomials of $F$ have forms

$x_0^{2l+1} x_1^t x_2^u x_3^{r-t-u}$ where $0 \leq t + u + r = 2$. If we choose the 1-PS $\lambda$

of the form (3.1) with $a = b = c = 1$, $d = -3$ then $a t_1 + b t_2 + ct_3 + d(3 - t_1 - t_2 - t_3) = 4(t_1 + t_2 + t_3) - 9 \leq 8 - 9 = -1$. So $\mu(x, \lambda) < 0$.

($c_2$) The case that the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is an irreducible, reduced surface

with non-isolated singularities. This implies that a general hyperplane section is an irreducible cubic curve and therefore has only one singular point. This means that the singular locus is a line. We can assume that the line of singular

locus is given by $V(x_0, x_1)$. Then the surface can be given by a polynomial $F = f_3(x_0, x_1) + x_2 f_2(x_0, x_1) + x_3 g_3(x_0, x_1)$ where $g_2$ and $f_1$ for $i = 2, 3$ are homogeneous polynomials of degree 2 and $i$ respectively (see [B-W], p. 252).

Every monomial of $F$ has one of the following forms

\[ x_0^r x_1^{3-r} \text{ for } 0 \leq r \leq 3, \quad x_0^t x_1^{2-t} x_2, \quad x_0^u x_1^{2-u} x_3 \text{ for } 0 \leq t, u \leq 2. \quad (3.3) \]

We choose an 1-PS $\lambda$ in form (3.1) with $a = b = -1$, $c = d = 1$ then from (3.3), we have:

\[ r(a - b) + 3b = -3; \quad (a - b)t + 2b + c = -1; \quad (a - b)u + 2b + d = -1. \]

So we have $\mu(x, \lambda) < 0$.

($c_3$) The case that $x$ is of the type $D_4$ or $D_5$ or $E_6$. We can choose coordinates such that $x$

is given by a polynomial $F = x_3 x_0^3 + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2)$ where $f_3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree 3. Moreover, we can assume that $Q = (0 : 0 : 1 : 0) \in V(f_3)$.

This means that the coefficient of the monomial $x_2^3$ in $f_3$ is zero. The monomials of $F$ are $x_3 x_0^2$ and $x_0^{3-i-j} x_1^i x_2^j$ for $0 \leq i + j \leq 3$ and $j < 3$. We choose an 1-PS $\lambda$

in form (3.1) with $a = b = -3$, $c = 1$ and $d = 5$. Then we have $2a + d = -1$ and

$(3 - i - j)a + ib + jc = -3(3 - i - j) - 3i + j = -9 + 4j < 0$. So $\mu(x, \lambda) < 0$.

($c_4$) The case that $x$ is of the type $E_7$. We may assume that $x$ is given by an irreducible

homogeneous polynomial $f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2)$. The monomials of $f_3$ are $x_0^{3-i-j} x_1^i x_2^j$ for

$0 \leq i + j \leq 3$. Then we can choose an 1-PS $\lambda$ in form (3.1) with $a = b = c = -1$

and $d = 3$. Then we have $(3 - i - j)a + ib + jc = -3$. So $x(x, \lambda) < 0$.

($c_5$) The case that $x$ belongs to one of $A_1 A_3, A_1 A_4, A_1 A_5, 2 A_1 A_3$. Assume that $P = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$ is an $A_1$ singularity of the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$. Then $X_x$ is given by

\[ F = x_3 f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2), \]

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$. Moreover, as in the

case a), we can choose coordinates such that $f_2 = x_0^2 - x_0 x_2$ and

\[ f_3 = a_0 x_0^3 + a_1 x_0^2 x_1 + a_2 x_0 x_1^2 + a_3 x_1^3 + a_4 x_0^2 x_2 + a_5 x_0 x_2^2 + a_6 x_2^3, \]
3.3 The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

see [B-W], p. 248. So we can write:

\[ F = x_3(x_1^2 - x_0x_2) + a_0x_0^3 + a_1x_0^2x_1 + a_2x_0x_1^2 + a_3x_1^3 + a_4x_1x_2 + a_5x_1x_2^2 + a_6x_2^3. \]

Moreover, we can assume that \( Q = (0:0:1:0) \in V(f_2, f_3, x_3) \) is a multiple point with multiplicity at least 4. This implies that \( a_i = 0 \) for all \( 3 \leq i \leq 6 \). The monomials of \( F \) are \( x_3x_1^2, x_3x_0x_2, x_3^3, x_0^3x_1 \) and \( x_0x_2^2 \). We choose an 1-PS \( \lambda \) in form (3.1) with \( a = d = -3, b = 1, c = 5 \). Then \( 2b + d = -1, a + c + d = -1, 3a = -9, 2a + b = -5 \) and \( a + 2b = -1 \). So \( \mu(x, \lambda) < 0 \).

\((c_6)\) Finally, we consider the case that \( x \) belongs to one of \( A_3, A_4 \) and \( A_5 \). As in the case b), we can assume that \( x \) is given by

\[ F = x_3x_0x_1 + x_0(a_0x_0^2 + a_1x_0x_2 + a_2x_2^2) + x_1(a_3x_1^2 + a_4x_1x_2 + a_5x_2^2). \]

The monomials of \( F \) are \( x_3x_0x_1, x_0^2, x_0^3x_2, x_0x_2^2, x_1^3, x_1^2x_2, x_1x_2^2 \). We choose an 1-PS \( \lambda \) in form (3.1) with \( a = b = -3, c = 1, d = 5 \). Then \( a + b + d = -1, 3a = 3b = -6, 2a + c = 2b + c = -5, a + 2c = b + 2c = -1 \). So \( \mu(x, \lambda) < 0 \).

This finishes the proof. \( \square \)

3.3 The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

In this section, we make a further study of semi-stable cubic surfaces; we generalize a useful method which was used in Chapter 2 to study non-singular cubic surfaces. We know that the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at 6 points in general position is isomorphic to a non-singular cubic surface. Conversely, each non-singular cubic surface is isomorphic to the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at 6 points in general position. We will define the concepts of 6-point scheme, 6-point scheme in almost general position and the csurface of a 6-point scheme in almost general position. The last two ones can be considered as the generalization of the concepts of general position and the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at 6 points in general position. We will prove that any semi-stable cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme in almost general position with a specific configuration. By this way, we can study properties of semi-stable cubic surfaces by checking corresponding 6-point schemes in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \); we can compute the multiplicities of lines and triple intersections on semi-stable cubic surfaces. Especially, in this way, we can study boundaries of subvarieties parameterizing non-singular cubic surfaces with a given number of star points as well as the boundaries of their moduli spaces in \( \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^1)^6 \).

A. 6-point schemes and 6-point schemes in almost general position

**Definition:** A 6-point scheme is a closed subscheme in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) of dimension zero and of length 6. Any 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) defines a formal cycle \( c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum n_i P_i \) for \( \sum n_i = 6 \); the set of the points \( P_i \) is called the support of \( \mathcal{P} \) and denoted by \( \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \). If the linear system of all cubic forms passing through a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) has (linear) dimension 4, then \( \mathcal{P} \) is called a 6-point scheme in almost general position.
Remark 3.3.1.

(i) Any subscheme of \(\mathbb{P}^2\) consisting of 6 distinct points in general position is a 6-point scheme in almost general position. Let \(\mathcal{H}^{gp}\) denote the subset of all 6-point schemes in general position.

(ii) Let \(\text{Hilb}_n\) denote the Hilbert scheme of zero-dimensional closed subschemes of length \(n\) in \(\mathbb{P}^2\). For the definition, construction and the existence of Hilbert schemes, we refer to [G], Exp. 221, Section 3. It is well-known that \(\text{Hilb}_n\) is non-singular, projective and irreducible of dimension \(2n\) (see [F], 2.4 and [E-H], p. 136). We denote by \(\mathcal{H}^a\) the subscheme of \(\text{Hilb}_6\) consisting of all 6-point schemes in almost general position.

(iii) Let \(\mathcal{P} \in \text{Hilb}_6\). Let \(I \subset k[x_0, x_1, x_2]\) be the homogeneous ideal defining \(\mathcal{P}\). “A cubic form \(f_3 \in k[x_0, x_1, x_2]\) passing through \(\mathcal{P}\)” means that \(f\) is an element of \(I\).

(iv) Let \(\mathcal{P} \in \text{Hilb}_6\). Let \(h_\mathcal{P}\) be the Hilbert function corresponding to \(\mathcal{P}\). Then \(\mathcal{P}\) is a 6-point scheme in almost general position if and only if \(h_\mathcal{P}(3) = 6\).

Lemma 3.3.2. Let \(\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^a\) and let \(l\) be any line in \(\mathbb{P}^2\) such that \(l \cap \mathcal{P} \neq \emptyset\). Then the length of \(l \cap \mathcal{P}\) is not greater than 4.

Proof. Let \(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}\) be the linear system of cubic forms passing through \(\mathcal{P}\). Let \(f_3\) be an element of \(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}\). If the length of \(l \cap \mathcal{P}\) is at least 4 then \(f_3\) factors into the linear form defining \(l\) and a quadratic form passing \(\mathcal{P} \setminus \{l \cap \mathcal{P}\}\). Suppose that the length of \(l \cap \mathcal{P}\) is greater than 4. This implies that the linear space of quadratic forms passing through \(\mathcal{P} \setminus \{l \cap \mathcal{P}\}\) has dimension greater than 4. This means that the dimension of \(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}\) is greater than 4. A contradiction!

Definition: Let \(\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^a\). We say that \(\mathcal{P}\) is a 6-point scheme with no 4 points on a line if there does not exist any line \(l\) in \(\mathbb{P}^2\) satisfying that the length of \(l \cap \mathcal{P}\) equals to 4. Denote \(\mathcal{H}^o\) for the subset of 6-point schemes with no 4 points on a line.

Lemma 3.3.3. The subscheme \(\mathcal{H}^a\) in \(\text{Hilb}_6\) has dimension 12. The same holds for \(\mathcal{H}^o\).

Proof. Consider the morphism \(c: \mathcal{H}_6 \to S_6 \setminus (\mathbb{P}^2)^6\) which maps each \(\mathcal{P} \in \text{Hilb}_6\) to the formal cycle of \(\mathcal{P}\). Let \(U = S_6 \setminus ((\mathbb{P}^2)^6 - \Delta)\), where \(\Delta\) is the diagonal closed subset of \((\mathbb{P}^2)^6\). Let \(U^a\) (respectively \(U^o\)) be the subset of \(U\) consisting of elements with 6 distinct points such that no 5 (respectively 4) points collinear. It is clear that \(U^a\) and \(U^o\) are open subsets of \(U\). Note that \(c^{-1}(U^a) \subset \mathcal{H}^a\) and \(c^{-1}(U^o) \subset \mathcal{H}^o\). The morphism \(c\) induces isomorphisms from \(c^{-1}(U^a)\) to \(U^a\) and from \(c^{-1}(U^o)\) to \(U^o\).

\[\square\]

B. Csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

Lemma 3.3.4. Let \(\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^o\). Let \(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}\) be the linear system of cubic forms passing through \(\mathcal{P}\).

(i) The base locus of \(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}\) is the support of \(\mathcal{P}\).
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

(ii) Let \( \{f_1, \ldots, f_3\} \) be a basis of \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \). Consider the morphism
\[
\psi : \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^3 \\
P \mapsto (f_1(P) : f_2(P) : f_3(P) : f_4(P)).
\]

Let \( X \) be the closure of the image of \( \psi \). Then \( X \) is a cubic surface.

(iii) If \( \{g_1, \ldots, g_4\} \) is another basis of \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) and \( X' \) is the cubic surface obtained as in (ii), then \( X \) and \( X' \) are isomorphic.

Proof.

(i) Let \( P \in \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \). Since \( \mathcal{P} \) does not have 4 points on a line, there exists a cubic form in \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) which does not contain \( P \). This implies that the base locus of \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) is the support of \( \mathcal{P} \).

(ii) Let \( Q_1, Q_2 \) be two general points in \( \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \). The linear subspaces consisting of cubic forms through \( \mathcal{P} \cup \{Q_1\} \) and \( \mathcal{P} \cup \{Q_1, Q_2\} \) respectively have dimension 3 and 2. This implies that there exists a cubic form in \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) which contains \( Q_1 \) but does not contain \( Q_2 \) and conversely. This means that \( \psi \) is injective over an open subset of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \). Moreover, any two general cubic forms in \( \mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P} \) have 3 other points in common which do not belong to \( \mathcal{P} \). This implies that \( X \) is a cubic surface.

(iii) Let \( A = (a_{ij})_{1 \times 4} \) be the matrix of changing bases from \( \{f_1, \ldots, f_3\} \) to \( \{g_1, \ldots, g_4\} \). Then \( A \) defines a projective transformation which transforms \( X \) to \( X' \).

Definition: A csurface is an algebraic variety \( Y \) such that there exists a cubic surface \( X \subset \mathbb{P}^3 \) such that \( X \cong Y \).

From the lemma, we see that each \( \mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^0 \) determines uniquely (up to isomorphisms) a csurface, which is called the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \). If \( \mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^{op} \), then the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is the blowing-up of \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at \( \mathcal{P} \).

Consider the case that \( \mathcal{P}_0 \) contains 4 points on a line. There exists a line \( l \) such that \( l \cap \mathcal{P}_0 \) has length 4. In this case the base locus of \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}_0} \) contains all points on \( l \). Each cubic form in \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}_0} \) factors into the linear form defining \( l \) and a quadratic form passing through \( \mathcal{P}_0 - \{\mathcal{P}_0 \cap l\} \), which is contained in a unique line \( d \). In other words, we can write \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}_0} = l.Q \), where \( Q \) is the linear space of quadratic forms passing through \( \mathcal{P}_0 - \{\mathcal{P}_0 \cap l\} \). So each choice of a basis of \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}_0} \) reduces to a basis of \( Q \). The closure of the map defined by this basis of \( Q \) is a quadric surface \( Q \) in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \). Let \( H \) be the hyperplane in \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) corresponding to the quadratic form in \( Q \) defining \( C = l \cup d \). Set \( C_{\mathcal{P}_0} := Q \cup H \). The surface \( C_{\mathcal{P}_0} \) is called the csurface of \( \mathcal{P}_0 \).

Definition: Let \( P_0 = (1 : 0 : 0) \), \( P_1 = (0 : 1 : 0) \) and \( P_2 = (0 : 0 : 1) \). Let \( \varphi : \mathbb{P}^2 - - \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^2 \) be the quadratic transformation with respect to \( P_0, P_1 \) and \( P_2 \) (see [H], V.4.2.3). Let \( C \) be the cubic curve given by
\[
F = \sum a_{ijk} x_0^i x_1^j x_2^k \text{ for } i + j + k = 3 \text{ and } 0 \leq i, j, k \leq 2. \tag{3.4}
\]

The cubic curve defined by \( F_\varphi := \sum a_{ijk} y_0^{2-i}y_1^{2-j}y_2^{2-k} \) in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) is called the image of \( C \) by \( \varphi \) and is denoted by \( C_\varphi \).
Remark 3.3.5.

(i) A cubic curve given by a polynomial as in (3.4) contains the 3 points $P_0, P_1$ and $P_2$ and its image contains the 3 points $Q_0 = (1 : 0 : 0), Q_1 = (0 : 1 : 0)$ and $Q_2 = (0 : 0 : 1)$ in the second $\mathbb{P}^2$.

(ii) Let $\varphi^{-1}$ be the inverse of $\varphi$. We know that $\varphi^{-1} = \varphi$. It is clear that $(F_\varphi)_{\varphi^{-1}} = F$ where $F$ is a polynomial as in (3.4).

From now on, when we consider a quadratic transformation with respect to $P_i = (1 : 0 : 0), P_j = (0 : 1 : 0), P_k = (0 : 0 : 1)$ from $\mathbb{P}^2$ to $\mathbb{P}^2$, we use notation $Q_i, Q_j, Q_k$ for the points which are the images of lines $P_j P_k, P_i P_k$ and $P_i P_j$, respectively. This means that $Q_i = (1 : 0 : 0), Q_j = (0 : 1 : 0)$ and $Q_k = (0 : 0 : 1)$ in the second $\mathbb{P}^2$.

Lemma 3.3.6. Let $C$ be a cubic curve given by a polynomial as in (3.4).

(i) If $C$ is non-singular at any $P_i$ then $C_\varphi$ equals to the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$.

(ii) If $C$ is singular at only one $P_i$ then $C_\varphi$ factors into $d_{jk} := \overline{Q_j Q_k}$ for $\{i, j, k\} = \{0, 1, 2\}$ and the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$.

(iii) If $C$ factors into $l_{jk} := \overline{P_j P_k}$ and a conic then $C_\varphi$ is singular at $Q_i$ for $\{i\} = \{0, 1, 2\} - \{j, k\}$.

(iv) Suppose that $C$ is singular at $P_0, P_1$ and $P_2$. This means that $C = l_{ij} \cup l_{ik} \cup l_{jk}$. Then $C_\varphi = d_{ij} \cup d_{ik} \cup d_{jk}$.

(v) Suppose that $C$ is singular at $P_i, P_j$ and non-singular at $P_k$.

(a) If $C = 2l_{ij} \cup \emptyset$ then $C_\varphi$ factors into $d_{ik}, d_{jk}$ and the closure of $\varphi(l - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$.

(b) If $C$ factors into $l_{ij}$ and an irreducible conic $C_0$ containing $P_0, P_1, P_2$ then $C_\varphi$ factors into $d_{ik}, d_{jk}$ and the closure of $\varphi(C_0 - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$.

(vi) If $C$ is irreducible and $C$ contains a given point $P$ on the line $l_{ij}$ for $i, j \in \{0, 1, 2\}$, then $C_\varphi$ is tangent at $P_k$ to a direction which is determined uniquely by $P$, where $\{k\} = \{0, 1, 2\} - \{i, j\}$. Conversely, if $C$ is non-singular at $P_k$ and tangent to a given direction at $P_k$ for $k \in \{0, 1, 2\}$, then $C_\varphi$ contains a specific point $P \in \overline{Q_i Q_j}$ defined by the direction, where $\{i, j\} = \{0, 1, 2\} - \{k\}$.

Proof.

(i) Let $P \in C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\}$ and $P = (x_0 : x_1 : x_2)$. We have $\varphi(P) = (x_1, x_2 : x_0 x_2,x_0 x_1)$. Since $F_\varphi(\varphi(P)) = 0$, we have $\varphi(P) \in C_\varphi$. This implies that the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$ is contained in $C_\varphi$. Moreover, since $C$ is non-singular at any $P_i$, a general cubic curve containing $P_0, P_1, P_2$ intersects $C$ at 3 other distinct points. This implies that the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$ is a reduced cubic curve. So $F_\varphi$ is a homogeneous polynomial defining this closure.
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

(ii) Suppose that C is singular at $P_0 = (1 : 0 : 0)$. Then C is given by

$$F = a_1 x_0 x_1^2 + a_2 x_0 x_2^2 + a_3 x_1^2 x_2 + a_4 x_1 x_2^2 + a_5 x_0 x_1 x_2.$$  

We see that

$$F_x = a_1 y_0 y_1^2 + a_2 y_0 y_2^2 + a_3 y_1^2 y_2 + a_4 y_1 y_2^2 + a_5 y_0 y_1 y_2 = y_0 (a_1 y_1^2 + a_2 y_1^2 + a_3 y_0 y_2 + a_4 y_0 y_1 + a_5 y_0 y_1 y_2).$$

This implies that the line $d_{12} = V(y_0) \subset C_{\psi}$. Moreover, for any $P \in C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\}$, we have $\psi(P) \in C_{\psi}$. This implies that the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$ is contained in $C_{\psi}$.

Conversely, let $T$ be the closure of $\varphi(C - \{P_0, P_1, P_2\})$. Then $T$ is a reduced conic curve. This means that $d \cup T$ is a reduced cubic curve. This implies that $C_{\psi} = d \cup T$.

(iii) Suppose that C factors into $l_{12} := P_1 P_2$ and a conic $C_0$ containing $P_0 = (1 : 0 : 0)$. Then $C$ is defined by $F = x_0 (a_1 x_2^2 + a_2 x_1^2 + a_3 x_0 x_2 + a_4 x_0 x_1 + a_5 x_1 x_2)$. We see that $F_x = a_1 y_0 y_1^2 + a_2 y_0 y_2^2 + a_3 y_1^2 y_2 + a_4 y_1 y_2^2 + a_5 y_0 y_1 y_2$. Therefore $C_{\psi}$ is singular at $Q_0 = (1 : 0 : 0)$.

(iv) It is clear from the definition of $C_{\psi}$.

(v) and (vi). Use the same argument as above.

\[
\square
\]

Lemma 3.3.7. Let $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^\circ$. Suppose that $\mathcal{P}$ contains 3 distinct points $P_1, P_2$ and $P_3$. Suppose further that there exists a cubic form in $\mathcal{L}_P$ which is non-singular at any $P_i$ for $i = 1, 2, 3$. Let $\varphi$ be the quadratic transformation with respect to $P_1, P_2$ and $P_3$. Then the set $\varphi(\mathcal{L}_P) := \{F \varphi \mid F \in \mathcal{L}_P\}$ is a 4-dimensional linear space whose base locus is of dimension 0.

Proof. Choose coordinates such that $P_1 = (1 : 0 : 0), P_2 = (0 : 1 : 0)$ and $P_3 = (0 : 0 : 1)$. Suppose that the base locus of $\varphi(\mathcal{L}_P)$ contains an irreducible component $Y$ of positive dimension. Since $\varphi$ is one-to-one in $\mathbb{P}^2 - V(x_0 x_1 x_2)$, the variety $Y$ is contained in $V(y_0 y_1 y_2)$. Assume that $Y$ contains the line $d_{12} = V(y_0)$. This means that for any $F \in \mathcal{L}_P$, we have $F_x = y_0 g_2(y_0, y_1, y_2)$ where $g_2$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree 2 and vanishes at $Q_3 = (0 : 0 : 1)$. Then $F = (F_x)_{\psi^{-1}}$ is singular at $P_1 = (1 : 0 : 0)$, see (3.3.6). A contradiction! \[
\square
\]

Definition: Let $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^\circ$ satisfy the conditions as in the previous lemma. Let $I$ be the ideal generated by all cubic forms in $\varphi(\mathcal{L}_P)$. The scheme defined by this ideal is called the image of $\mathcal{P}$ and denoted by $\varphi(\mathcal{P})$.

Proposition 3.3.8. Every semi-stable cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of some 6-point scheme in almost general position with no 4 points on a line.
Chapter 3. On the moduli spaces...

Proof. Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. If $X$ is a non-singular cubic surface then $X$ is isomorphic to the blowing-up of a 6-point scheme in general position. We consider the case that $X$ is singular.

Suppose that $X$ does not have any $A_2$ singularity. By choosing coordinates, we may assume $X$ to be defined by

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$. The scheme $\mathcal{P} = V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$ defines an element in $H^0$. The 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ is contained in an irreducible conic curve defined by $f_2$ and the cycle of $\mathcal{P}$ corresponds to a partition $(2^{i-1}1^k)$ of 6. Let $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ be the linear space of cubic forms passing through $\mathcal{P}$. Since $\mathcal{P}$ does not contain any triple point, we see that the cubic forms $x_0f_2, x_1f_2$ and $x_2f_2$ are elements of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. Moreover, we have $\{x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3\}$ is a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$.

Consider the morphism $\psi : \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^3$ determined by this basis. Then we see that $F(x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3) = -f_3f_2^3 + f_3f_3^3 = 0$. This means that $X$ is isomorphic to the cusp of $\mathcal{P}$.

Consider the case that $X$ contains at least one $A_2$ singularity. By choosing coordinates, we may assume $X$ to be defined by

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$ and $f_2$ is reducible. The scheme $\mathcal{P} = V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$ defines an element in $H^0$ which corresponds to a partition $(3^{i-1}2^{j-1}1^k)$ of 6, where $j \geq 1$. Let $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ be the linear space of cubic forms passing through $\mathcal{P}$. Note that, if $\mathcal{P}$ has a multiple point then the direction at the multiple point is contained in the reducible conic defined by $f_2$. This implies that the cubic forms $x_0f_2, x_1f_2$ and $x_2f_2$ are elements of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. Moreover, we have $\{x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3\}$ is a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. As above, we see that $X$ is isomorphic to the cusp of $\mathcal{P}$.

Remark 3.3.9. Let $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^0$ such that the cusp of $\mathcal{P}$ is isomorphic to a semi-stable cubic surface and the support of $\mathcal{P}$ contains at least 3 distinct points. Let $P_1, P_2, P_3$ be some 3 distinct points contained in $\mathcal{P}$. Choose coordinates such that $P_1 = (1 : 0 : 0), P_2 = (0 : 1 : 0)$ and $P_3 = (0 : 0 : 1)$. Let $\varphi$ be the quadratic transformation with respect to $P_1, P_2$ and $P_3$. As in the proof of the previous lemma, there exist a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$ of the form $\{(x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3)\}$ where $f_2, f_3 \in k[x_0, x_1, x_2]$ are homogeneous polynomials such that the cusp of $\mathcal{P}$ is isomorphic to the surface $X = V(x_3f_2 + f_3)$.

On the other hand, we see that $\{(x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3)\}$ is a basis of the linear space $\varphi(\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P})$. Consider the morphism:

$$\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\varphi(\mathcal{P})) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^3$$

$$(y_0 : y_1 : y_2) \mapsto ((x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3))$$

defined by this basis. The closure of the image of this morphism is a surface $Y$. We will see that the surface $Y$ is isomorphic to $X$. For this, let $f_2 = a_1x_0x_1 + a_2x_0x_2 + a_3x_1x_2$. Then $f_2$ defines a conic curve containing $P_1, P_2, P_3$. We have:

$$(x_0f_2) = y_1y_2(a_1y_2 + a_2y_3 + a_3y_3),$$
$$(x_1f_2) = y_0y_2(a_1y_2 + a_2y_3 + a_3y_3),$$
$$(x_2f_2) = y_0y_3(a_1y_2 + a_2y_3 + a_3y_3).$$
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

Let \( h_1 = a_1 y_2 + a_2 y_1 + a_3 y_0 \) and \( F = x_3 f_2 + f_3 \). We have

\[
F((x_0 f_2)_\varphi, (x_1 f_2)_\varphi, (x_2 f_2)_\varphi, (f_3)_\varphi) = -f_3 f_2 (y_1 y_2 h_1, y_0 y_2 h_1, y_0 y_1 h_1) + f_3 (y_1 y_2 h_1, y_0 y_2 h_1, y_0 y_1 h_1)
\]

Note that

\[
f_2(y_1 y_2, y_0 y_2, y_0 y_1) = a_1 y_0 y_1 y_2^2 + a_2 y_0 y_1^2 y_2 + a_3 y_0^2 y_1 y_2
\]

and \( f_3(y_1 y_2, y_0 y_2, y_0 y_1) = y_0 y_1 y_2 (f_3)_\varphi \). So we have

\[
F((x_0 f_2)_\varphi, (x_1 f_2)_\varphi, (x_2 f_2)_\varphi, (f_3)_\varphi) = 0.
\]

Since \( F \) is irreducible, the surface \( Y \) is defined by the polynomial \( F \). This implies that \( \varphi(\mathcal{P}) \) is a 6-point scheme in almost general position. Therefore, we have proved the following proposition.

**Proposition 3.3.10.** Let \( \mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^6 \). Suppose that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is isomorphic to a semi-stable cubic surface and the support of \( \mathcal{P} \) contains at least 3 distinct points. Let \( \varphi \) be the quadratic transformation with respect to some 3 distinct points of \( \mathcal{P} \). Then the subscheme \( \varphi(\mathcal{P}) \) is a 6-point scheme in almost general position and the csurface of \( \varphi(\mathcal{P}) \) is isomorphic to the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \).

### C. Multiplicity of a line on a semi-stable cubic surface. Triple intersection and multiplicity

We recall how the 27 lines of a non-singular cubic surface are obtained by blowing-up \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) at a 6-point scheme in general position.

Let \( \mathcal{P} \) be a 6-point scheme in general position. Let \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}} \) be the linear space of cubic forms passing through \( \mathcal{P} \). Let \( \{f_1, \ldots, f_4\} \) be a basis of \( \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}} \). Consider the morphism:

\[
\psi : \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}^3
\]

\[
P \mapsto (f_1(P) : f_2(P) : f_3(P) : f_4(P)).
\]

The closure of the image of \( \psi \) is a non-singular cubic surface \( X \) with exactly 27 lines obtained as follows.

(i) Consider the two-dimensional linear subspace \( S_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) consisting of cubic forms which are singular at \( P_i \). This subspace determines uniquely a line on \( X \) which we denote by \( P_i \). The surface \( X \) has 6 lines of this type.

(ii) Consider the two-dimensional linear subspace \( S_{ij} \), for \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 6 \) consisting of all cubic forms which factor into the linear form defining \( l_{ij} = P_i P_j \) and quadratic forms passing through \( \mathcal{P} - \{P_i, P_j\} \). This subspace determines uniquely a line on \( X \) which is denoted by \( \bar{l}_{ij} \). The line \( \bar{l}_{ij} \) is the closure of the image of \( l_{ij} - \{P_i, P_j\} \). The surface \( X \) has 15 lines of this type.
(iii) Consider the two-dimensional linear subspace \( S_{C_i} \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) consisting of all cubic forms which factor into the quadratic form defining the conic \( C_i \) through \( \{ P_1, \ldots, P_6 \} \rightarrow \{ P_i \} \) and linear forms vanishing at \( P_i \). This subspace determines uniquely a line on \( X \), which is denoted by \( \tilde{C}_i \). The line \( \tilde{C}_i \) is the closure of the image of \( \{ P_1, P_2, P_3 \} \). So the surface has 6 lines of this type.

Let \( \mathcal{L} \) be the scheme consisting of pairs \( (x, l) \in \mathbb{P}^{19} \times \mathcal{G} \) where \( l \) corresponds to a line on the cubic surface \( X_x \) defined by \( x \). Let \( \mathcal{L} \to \mathbb{P}^{19} \) be the projection. Let \( \mathcal{H} \) be the set of 6-point schemes such that the csurface of each element in \( \mathcal{H} \) is isomorphic to a semi-stable cubic surface. There exists a morphism from an open covering of \( \mathcal{H} \) to \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) mapping each \( \mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H} \) into a point corresponding to an embedding of the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \). The pullback of \( \mathcal{L} \to \mathbb{P}^{19} \) via this morphism gives a morphism \( p : \mathcal{L}^0 \to \mathcal{H} \), which is proper.

Let \( \mathcal{H}^{gp} \) be the subset of \( \mathcal{H} \) consisting of 6-point schemes in general position. Let \( (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \subset (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \) be the subset of 6-tuples \( (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \) such that the 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) are in general position. Let \( f : (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \to \mathcal{H}^{gp} \) be the natural map, which is finite and surjective. We have \( M := k(\mathcal{H}) = k(\mathcal{H}^{gp}) \subset k((\mathbb{P}^2)^6) =: N \). Define \( \mathcal{H} \) as the normalization of \( \mathcal{H} \) in \( M \subset N \); we have \( g : \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{H} \) is finite, proper, surjective and it extends \( f \).

Let \( \mathcal{L} \) be the fibered product of \( g : \mathcal{H} \to \mathcal{H} \) and \( p : \mathcal{L}^0 \to \mathcal{H} \). We have sections \( \mathcal{P}_{ij}, \mathcal{P}_i^0, \mathcal{C}_i^0 : (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \to \mathcal{L} \) corresponding to 27 lines on non-singular cubic surfaces.

**Proposition 3.3.11.** The sections \( \mathcal{P}_{ij}, \mathcal{C}_i^0 \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) and \( \mathcal{P}_{ij}^0 \) for \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 6 \) extend uniquely to morphisms \( \mathcal{P}_i, \mathcal{C}_i \) and \( \mathcal{P}_{ij} \) respectively from \( \mathcal{H} \) to \( \mathcal{L} \).

**Proof.** Note that the morphism \( \mathcal{P}_{i}^0 : (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \to \mathcal{L} \) is injective. Denote by \( L_i^0 \) the image of \( \mathcal{P}_i^0 \). Then we have an isomorphism \( \mathcal{P}_i^0 : (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \to L_i^0 \). Let \( \overline{L_i} \) be the closure of \( L_i^0 \) inside \( \mathcal{L} \). Since the morphism \( \overline{L_i} \to \mathcal{H} \) is quasi-finite (see (3.3.8) and Section 3.1, p. 49) and proper, it is finite. By Zariski’s Main Theorem ([Mu2], p. 288), the morphism \( \mathcal{P}_i^0 \) extends uniquely to an isomorphism \( \mathcal{P}_i : \mathcal{H} \to \overline{L_i} \). Similarly, we have isomorphisms \( \mathcal{P}_{ij} \) and \( \mathcal{C}_i \).

\( \square \)

By composing with \( \overline{\mathcal{L}} \to \mathcal{L} \), we can consider the morphisms \( \mathcal{P}_i, \mathcal{C}_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) and \( \mathcal{P}_{ij} \) for \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 6 \) above as morphisms from \( \mathcal{H} \) to \( \mathcal{L} \).

**Corollary 3.3.12.** Let \( (x, l) \in \mathcal{L} \), where the corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) is semi-stable and isomorphic to the csurface of a given 6-point scheme in \( \mathcal{H} \). Then \( (x, l) \) is contained in one of the images of the morphisms \( \mathcal{P}_i, \mathcal{C}_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) and \( \mathcal{P}_{ij} \) for \( 1 \leq i < j \leq 6 \).

**Proof.** Consider the commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\overline{\mathcal{L}} & \overset{p}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{L}^0 \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\overline{\mathcal{H}} & \overset{g}{\longrightarrow} & \mathcal{H}.
\end{array}
\] (3.5)

Suppose that surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of an element \( y \in \mathcal{H} \). Since \( g \) is surjective, there exists \( z \in \mathcal{H} \) such that \( g(z) = y \). If \( x \in \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \), then the result is clear.
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

from the fact of obtaining the lines on a non-singular cubic surface. Consider the case that $X_x$ is singular. We see in page 71 when studying $iA_i,A_j$ for $2i + 3j \leq 9$, $i \leq 4$ and $(i,j) \neq (3,1)$ that the line $l$ corresponds to a two-dimension linear subspace of the forms $P_i$, $C_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ or $S_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$. This implies that $(x,l)$ is contained in the image of one of the morphisms $\mathcal{P}_i$, $C_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and $\mathcal{P}_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$. □

**Definition:** Let $(x,l) \in \mathcal{L}$, where the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a given 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}$. The number of the morphisms $\mathcal{P}_i$, $C_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and $\mathcal{P}_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ whose images contains $(x,l)$ is called the *multiplicity* of $l$. Consequently the multiplicity of any line on a given semi-stable cubic surface is at least one.

**Remark 3.3.13.** Let $l$ be a line on a semi-stable cubic surface $X$ isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$. Consider all linear subspaces of $\mathcal{L}_P$ of the forms $S_{P_i}$, $S_{C_i}$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and $S_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ which determine $l$. Then the number of these linear subspaces is the multiplicity of $l$ (see pp. 71-81).

The multiplicity of $l$ can be computed with the help of specializations. Namely, let $\Gamma_0$ be an one-dimensional family of non-singular cubic surfaces such that $X$ is the fiber of $x_0 \in \Gamma_0$. Suppose further that there exist 27 sections corresponding to the 27 lines over $\Gamma_0$; the line $l$ is contained in one of these sections. The multiplicity of $l$ is the number of sections containing $l$. The multiplicity of $l$ is independent on the family chosen.

**Proposition 3.3.14.** Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface and $l$ be a line on $X$.

(i) Suppose that $l$ contains exactly one singular point.

(a) If the singular point is $A_1$, then $l$ is of multiplicity 2.

(b) If the singular point is $A_2$, then $l$ is of multiplicity 3.

(ii) Suppose that $l$ contains 2 singular points.

(a) If both of singularities are $A_1$, then $l$ is of multiplicity 4.

(b) If both of singularities are $A_2$, then $l$ is of multiplicity 9.

(c) If two singularities are of different types, then $l$ is of multiplicity 6.

(iii) If $l$ does not contain any singular point, then $l$ is of multiplicity 1.

**Proof.**

(1) Consider the case that $X$ contains only $A_1$ singularities. By choosing coordinates, we assume that $X$ is given by

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 1,2$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$. Let $\mathcal{P}$ be the 6-point scheme $V_{P_2}(f_2,f_3)$. Let $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where the points $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ are unnecessarily different. We know that $X$ is the closure of the image of the morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P}) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^3$ determined by the basis $\{x_0 f_2, x_1 f_2, x_2 f_2, -f_3\}$ of $\mathcal{L}_P$. Let $C$ be the conic curve in $\mathbb{P}^2 = V(x_3)$ defined by $f_2$. It is clear that the image of any
point on $C - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is the point $S = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$, which is an $A_1$ singularity. Let $P_i$ be a point in the support of $\mathcal{P}$. Each cubic form in $S_{P_i}$ factors into $f_2$ and a linear form vanishing at $P_i$. This implies that the line $\tilde{P}_i$ contains the singular point $S$. Moreover, we prove that $\tilde{P}_i$ is the line containing $S$ and $P_i$. For this, suppose that $P_i = (1:0:0:0)$. Any line $d$ containing $P_i$ is given by $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(a_1x_1 + a_2x_2)$. We see that $d \cap \tilde{P}_i = V(F, a_1x_1 + a_2x_2)$. The line connecting $S$ and $P_i$ is given by $x_1 = x_2 = 0$. This implies that $\tilde{P}_i$ is the line containing $S$ and $P_i$.

Let $l$ be a line on $X$ containing at least one $A_i$ singularity; we may assume $l$ to be one of $\tilde{P}_i$. If $l$ contains exactly one $A_i$ singularity, then the corresponding point $P_i$ is a single point of $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$. It is easy to check that the linear subspaces $S_{P_i}$ and $S_{C_i}$ are the same. Moreover, they are different from other linear subspaces of the forms $S_{P_i}$ and $S_{C_j}$. Therefore, the multiplicity of $l$ is 2. If $l$ contains two $A_i$ singularities, then the corresponding point $P_i$ is a double point of $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$. So we may assume that in the cycle $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$, the points $P_i$ coincides with $P_2$. This implies that the linear subspaces $S_{P_1}, S_{P_2}, S_{C_1}$ and $S_{C_2}$ are the same; in fact, the line $l$ is of multiplicity 4.

Consider the case that $l$ does not contain any singular point. If $X$ has exactly one $A_1$ singularity, then there exist exactly 6 lines of multiplicity 2. Note that $X$ has exactly 21 lines. This implies that the other 15 lines are of multiplicity 1. So $l$ is of multiplicity 1. If $X$ has exactly two $A_1$ singularities, then there exist exactly 8 lines with multiplicity 2; there exists one line with multiplicity 4. Note that $X$ has exactly 16 lines. This implies that the other 7 lines of $X$ are of multiplicity 1. So $l$ is of multiplicity 1 in this case. If $X$ has exactly three $A_1$ singularities, then there exist exactly 6 lines with multiplicity 2, there exist exactly 3 lines with multiplicity 4. In this case, the surface $X$ has exactly 12 lines. This implies that the other 3 lines are of multiplicity 1. This means that $l$ is of multiplicity 1. Finally, if $X$ has exactly four $A_1$ singularities, then there exist exactly 6 lines with multiplicity 4. Since $X$ has exactly 9 lines, the other 3 lines are of multiplicity 1. So $l$ is of multiplicity 1.

(2) Consider the case that $X$ contains at least one $A_2$ singularity and $l$ is one line on $X$ through one $A_2$ singularity. By choosing coordinates, we may assume $X$ to be given by a polynomial of the form

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 2, 3$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$; the quadratic form $f_2$ defines two different lines $d_1, d_2$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ where the intersection point of $d_1$ and $d_2$ is not contained in $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_3)$. Let $\mathcal{P}$ be the 6-point scheme defined by $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$. Then $l$ is one of $\overline{SP_i}$, where $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$, are the points (not necessarily different) of $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$. Suppose that $l = \overline{SP_i}$. We know that the surface $X$ is the closure of the image of the morphism $\psi$ from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^1$ defined by the basis $\{x_0f_2, x_1f_2, x_2f_2, -f_3\}$ of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. As in the previous case, we see that the $A_2$ singular point $S = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$ is the image of $(d_1 \cup d_2) - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$; the line $\overline{SP_i}$ is $\tilde{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$.

If $l$ contains only one singular point, then the corresponding point $P_i$ is a single point of $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(f_2, f_3)$. We can assume that $P_i \in d_1$. We see that $d_1 \cap \mathcal{P}$ defines a zero-dimensional subscheme of length 3, which corresponds to a formal cycle $P_1 + P_2 + P_3$ where $P_2$ and $P_3$ are not necessarily different. Note that if $P_2$ and $P_3$ coincide, then $d_1$ is the direction at the double point. With the same argument, we see that $d_2 \cap \mathcal{P}$ defines a zero-dimensional subscheme which corresponds to a formal cycle $P_4 + P_5 + P_6$. Point...
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

where the point $P_4, P_5, P_6$ are not necessarily different and $d_2$ is the direction if $d_2 \cap P$ has multiple point. We see that the linear subspaces $S_{P_1}, S_{C_1}$ and $S_{S_2}$ are the same. Moreover, the subspace $S_{P_1}$ is different from other subspaces of the forms $S_{P_2}$ and $S_{ij}$. This means that the line $l(= P_1)$ is of multiplicity 3.

Suppose that $l$ contains another singular point which is of $A_1$ type. Then the corresponding point $P_1$ is a double point of $V_{p2}(f_2, f_3)$. This means that in the formal cycle $P_1 + P_2 + P_3$, the point $P_3$ coincides with $P_2$. We see that the linear subspaces $S_{P_1}, S_{P_2}, S_{C_1}, S_{C_2}, S_{S_3}$ and $S_{S_2}$ are the same and in fact, the multiplicity of the line $l$ is 6. Similarly, if $l$ contains two $A_2$ singularities, then the corresponding point $P_1$ is a triple point of $V_{p2}(f_2, f_3)$. This means that the subscheme $d_1 \cap P$ defines a cycle $3P_1$. And we can check that the line $l = P_1$ is of multiplicity 9.

Consider the case that $l$ does not contain any singularity. With the same argument used in (1), by checking case by case, we see that $l$ is of multiplicity 1. \quad \square

**Definition:** Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. A **triple intersection** of $X$ is a hyperplane intersection which factors into 3 lines. A point $P \in X$ is called a **star point** if it is contained in the intersection of all lines of some triple intersection of $X$. In that case, the triple intersection is also called a star triple.

**Example 9.** If $X$ is a non-singular cubic surface, then a triple intersection of $X$ is the hyperplane intersection of a tritangent plane. So there exist exactly 45 different triple intersections on $X$.

**Definition:** Let $x \in (\mathbb{P}^3)^{ss}$. Suppose that $x$ is a specialization of a given one-dimensional family of non-singular cubic surfaces, which locally possesses a section of star points. The specialization position of the section of star point on the corresponding surface $X_x$ is called a **proper star point** with respect to the family. It is clear that a proper star point is a star point.

**Example 10.** If $X$ is a non-singular cubic surface, then the concepts of star point and proper star point are the same as the concept of star point which we defined in the previous chapter.

**Remark 3.3.15.** Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. View $X$ as the csurface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$. Let $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where the points $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ are not necessarily different. Then we see that 45 triple intersections of $X$ corresponding to $(P_i, C_i, \tilde{l}_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and $(\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{hk})$ for $\{i, j, m, n, h, k\} = \{1, \ldots, 6\}$ are not necessarily different. But as in the case of non-singular cubic surfaces, we show in the following proposition that any triple intersection of $X$ is one of these.

**Proposition 3.3.16.** Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. Let $T$ be a triple intersection of $X$. Then there exists a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that its csurface is isomorphic to $X$. Furthermore, let $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$, where the points $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ are not necessarily different. Then $T$ corresponds to one of triple intersections of the forms $(P_i, C_j, \tilde{l}_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ or $(\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{hk})$ where $\{i, j, m, n, h, k\} = \{1, \ldots, 6\}$.

**Proof.**

(1) Consider the case that $X$ contains only $A_i$ singularities. There exists a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^6$ contained in an irreducible conic $C$ such that $X$ is the closure of the image of a morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ defined by some basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$. The image
of $C - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is an $A_1$ singularity, which is denoted by $S$. Let $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where $P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ are not necessarily different. Let $T = (d_1, d_2, d_3)$ be a triple intersection of $X$.

Suppose that there exist exactly two of the lines $d_1, d_2, d_3$ coinciding and containing $S$. We can assume that $d_1 = d_2 = \tilde{P}_1 = \tilde{P}_2$. By (3.1.13), we see that this happens only when $\tilde{P}_1$ contains (exactly) two $A_1$ singularities. This means that the corresponding point $P_1$ in $\mathcal{P}$ is a double point and $l_{12}$ is the direction at $P_1$. Note that the line $l_{12}$ is a unique line meeting $\tilde{P}_1$ but not containing any singular point since its multiplicity is 1. This implies that $d_3 = l_{12}$. So, in this case, we have $T = (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_2, l_{12})$.

Consider the case that $d_1 = \tilde{P}_t, d_2 = \tilde{P}_j$ where $\tilde{P}_t \neq \tilde{P}_j$. Suppose that $d_3 = \tilde{P}_k$ for $\tilde{P}_k \notin \{\tilde{P}_t, \tilde{P}_j\}$. This means that there exists a cubic curve, which factors into the conic $C$ and a line containing $\tilde{P}_t, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{P}_k$. This is impossible since three points $\tilde{P}_t, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{P}_k$ are not collinear. Suppose that $d_3 = \tilde{l}_{mn}$. The corresponding subspace $S_{mn}$ contains the cubic form $C \cup \tilde{l}_{ij}$ if $S_{mn} = S_{ij}$. This means that $d_3 = \tilde{l}_{ij}$ and $T = (\tilde{P}_t, \tilde{C}_j, l_{ij})$.

Consider the case that $d_1 = \tilde{l}_{ij}, d_2 = \tilde{l}_{mn}$ where $\tilde{l}_{ij} \neq \tilde{l}_{mn}$. The triple intersection $T$ corresponds to the cubic curve which contains $\tilde{l}_{ij} \cup \tilde{l}_{mn}$. This happens only when $\{i, j\} \cup \{m, n\} = \emptyset$. Moreover, we see that $d_3 = \tilde{l}_{kh}$ where $\{i, j, m, n, k, h\} = \{1, \ldots, 6\}$. In this case, we have $T = (\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{kk})$.

(2) Consider the case that $X$ contains at least one $A_2$ singularity. There exists a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^6$ contained in two different lines $l_1$ and $l_2$, such that $l_i \cap \mathcal{P}$ for $1 \leq i \leq 2$ has length 3 and $X$ is the closure of the image of a morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by some basis of $\mathcal{L}_T$. Furthermore, we can assume that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where the points $P_i$ are not necessarily different and three points $P_1, P_2, P_3$ are contained in $l_1$, three points $P_4, P_5, P_6$ are contained in $l_2$. As in the case above, we see that the image of $(l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is a point $S$, which is an $A_2$ singularity; the tangent cone at $S$ is two hyperplanes which are $H_1 = \text{span}(S, l_1)$ and $H_2 = \text{span}(S, l_2)$. The lines through $S$ are $\tilde{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and they are not necessarily different.

Suppose that $T$ is one of $H_1 \cap X$ and $H_2 \cap X$. Then $T = (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_2, l_{12})$ or $T = (\tilde{P}_4, \tilde{C}_5, l_{45})$. Consider the case that $T$ is not one of these two hyperplane intersections. Suppose that $T$ contains a line $\tilde{P}_t \subset H_1$ and a line $\tilde{P}_j \subset H_2$, then we see that $T = (\tilde{P}_t, \tilde{C}_j, l_{ij})$. If $T$ is formed by three lines, all of them do not contain the singular point $S$, then $T = (\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{kk})$ where $\{i, m, k\} = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $\{j, n, h\} = \{4, 5, 6\}$.

\begin{remark} 3.3.17 \end{remark} Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface isomorphic to the surface of some 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$. We know that a line $l$ on $X$ is determined by a two-dimensional linear subspace of $\mathcal{L}_T$ of the forms $S_{P_1}, S_{C}$ or $S_{ij}$ (3.3.12). The number of the linear subspaces determining the line $l$ is the multiplicity of $l$. Let $T$ be a given triple intersection of $X$. By the above proposition, we see that $T$ is determined by a triple of linear subspaces of the forms either $(S_{P_1}, S_{C_1}, S_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ or $(S_{ij}, S_{mn}, S_{kk})$ where $\{i, j, m, n, h, k\} = \{1, \ldots, 6\}$. Considering all the linear subspaces corresponding to three lines of $T$ enables us to determine how many triples of the forms $(\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{C}_j, l_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ and $(\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{kk})$ for $\{i, j, m, n, h, k\} = \{1, \ldots, 6\}$ coinciding with $T$. This fact allows us to talk about the \textit{multiplicity} of $T$.

As in the case of the multiplicity of a line on $X$, the multiplicity of $T$ can be computed with the help of specializations. Namely, let $\Gamma_0$ be an one-dimensional family of non-singular cubic surfaces such that $X$ is the fiber over $x_0 \in \Gamma_0$. Suppose further that there exist 45 sections corresponding to the 45 triple intersections over $\Gamma_0$; the
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

triple $T$ is contained in one of these sections. The multiplicity of $T$ is the number of sections containing $T$. The multiplicity of $T$ is independent on the family chosen.

The rest of this section is used to determine the multiplicities of lines and triple intersections, the number of star points on semi-stable cubic surfaces. Moreover, we describe how to recognize the singular points as well as the lines on semi-stable cubic surfaces from the configuration of corresponding 6-point schemes. From now on, unless stated differently, when we write the formal cycle $c(P)$ of a given 6-point scheme $P$, we always mean that the points in the cycle are mutually distinct.

$\mathcal{A}_1$ Let $x \in \mathcal{A}_1$. We know that the corresponding surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $P \in \mathcal{H}^0$ such that $c(P) = \sum_{i=1}^6 P_i$ where the 6 mutually distinct points lie on an irreducible conic curve $C$ (see Figure 3.1).

![Figure 3.1: 6-point schemes corresponding to points in $\mathcal{A}_1$](image)

By (3.3.14), we see that the image of $C - \text{Supp}(P)$ (via any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$) is the singular point; the lines $P_i = \hat{C}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ are the 6 lines through the singular point. Other lines of $X_x$ are $\hat{l}_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$. The 21 lines of $X_x$ with multiplicities correspond to the partition $(2^6, 1^{10})$ of 27. Moreover, we see that triple intersections $(P_n, \hat{C}_j, \hat{l}_{ij})$, $(\hat{P}_j, \hat{C}_i, \hat{l}_{ij})$ and $(\hat{P}_i, \hat{P}_j, \hat{l}_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ are the same. This means that every triple intersection $(\hat{P}_i, \hat{P}_j, \hat{l}_{ij})$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$ is of multiplicity 2. The surface $X_x$ has 30 distinct triple intersections which correspond to the partition $(2^{15}, 1^{15})$ of 45.

$2\mathcal{A}_1$ Let $x \in 2\mathcal{A}_1$. The corresponding surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $P \in \mathcal{H}^0$ contained in an irreducible conic curve $C$ and $c(P) = 2P_1 + \sum_{i=2}^5 P_i$ (see Figure 3.2.(a)).

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. Consider $P$ as a specialization of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the double point $2P_1$ is contained in the two sections corresponding the points $P_1$ and $P_6$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$. By (3.3.14), we see that the image of $C - \text{Supp}(P)$ is a point $S_1$, which is an $A_1$ singularity; the lines $P_i$ for $2 \leq i \leq 5$ are of multiplicity 2; the line $\hat{P}_1$ is of multiplicity 4 and it is the line containing two singular points of $X_x$. The singular point $S_1$ is contained in the lines $\hat{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 5$. Another singular point is contained in the lines $\hat{l}_{1i}$ for $2 \leq i \leq 5$, since the lines $\hat{l}_{1i}$ for $2 \leq i \leq 5$ are of multiplicity 2. The 16 lines of $X_x$ with multiplicities correspond to the partition $(4^1, 2^8, 1^7)$ of 27.
The triple intersection \( (2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{16}) \) has multiplicity 2 since it is determined by \( (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}) \) and \( (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}) \). Note that the line \( \tilde{l}_{16} \) is the closure of the image of the direction \( d \) at the double point \( 2\tilde{P}_1 \). Every triple intersection \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) for \( 2 \leq i \leq 5 \) has multiplicity 4 since it coincides with \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{C}_i, \tilde{l}_{ii}), (\tilde{C}_i, \tilde{P}_i, \tilde{l}_{ii}), (\tilde{P}_6, \tilde{C}_i, \tilde{l}_{6i}) \) and \( (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{6i}) \). Every triple intersection \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) for \( 2 \leq i < j \leq 5 \) has multiplicity 2 since it coincides with \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{C}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) and \( (\tilde{C}_j, \tilde{P}_i, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \). Similarly, every triple intersection \( (\tilde{l}_{ii}, \tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}) \) for \( \{i, j, m, n\} = \{2, 3, 4, 5\} \) has multiplicity 2. Every triple intersection \( (\tilde{l}_{16}, \tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{mn}) \) for \( \{i, j, m, n\} = \{2, 3, 4, 5\} \) has multiplicity 1. These triples do not contain any singularities. So \( X \) has 20 distinct triple intersections which correspond to the partition \( (4^4, 2^{13}, 1^3) \) of 45.

We see that the intersection point of \( \tilde{P}_1 \) and \( \tilde{l}_{16} \) is a star point of \( X \). In the next section we will prove that this point is also a proper star point.

**Remark 3.3.18.** When considering \( X_x \) as the csurface of a 6-point scheme as above, it is not clear how the second singular point is obtained. Consider the quadratic transformation with respect to \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \). Then the image of \( P \) is a 6-point scheme \( Q \) consisting of 6 distinct points \( \{Q_1, \ldots, Q_6\} \) where 3 points \( Q_2, Q_3, Q_6 \) lie on a line \( l_1 \); three points \( Q_1, Q_5, Q_6 \) lie on another line \( l_2 \), see Figure 3.2, (b).

By (3.3.10), the surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of \( Q \). Then 2 singular points of \( X \) are the images of 2 lines \( l_1, l_2 \) via any morphism from \( \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q) \) to \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) determined by a basis of \( L_Q \). The line corresponds to \( S_{Q_6} \) is the line containing the 2 singular points of \( X_x \).

**\( \mathbb{A}_2 \)** Let \( x \in \mathbb{A}_2 \). The corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( P \in \mathcal{H}_6 \) such that \( c(P) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \) where 3 points \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) lie on a line \( l_1 \); three points \( P_4, P_5, P_6 \) lie on another line \( l_2 \); the intersection point of \( l_1 \) and \( l_2 \) does not belong to \( P \) (see Figure 3.3).

Let \( L_P \) be the linear space of cubic forms passing through \( P \). Consider any morphism from \( \mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P) \) to \( \mathbb{P}^3 \) determined by a basis of \( L_P \). By (3.3.14), the image of \( (l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(P) \) is the singular point. The 6 lines \( \tilde{P}_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 6 \) contain the singularity and they are of multiplicity 3. The other 9 lines of \( X_x \) are \( \tilde{l}_{ij} \) for \( i \in \{1, 2, 3\} \) and \( j \in \{4, 5, 6\} \). These lines are of multiplicity 1. The 15 lines of \( X_x \) with multiplicities correspond to the partition \( (3^6, 1^9) \) of 27.
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

Note that the linear subspaces \( S_{P_i}, S_{C_i} \) and \( S_{j,k} \) for \( \{i, j, k\} = \{1, 2, 3\} \) or \( \{i, j, k\} = \{4, 5, 6\} \) are the same. This implies that the triple intersection \( (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_3) \) has multiplicity 6 since it coincides with \( (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{C}_3), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{P}_3), (\tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{C}_3) \) and \( (\tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{P}_3) \). Similarly, the triple \( (\tilde{P}_4, \tilde{P}_5, \tilde{P}_6) \) has multiplicity 6. Every triple intersection \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 3 \) and \( 4 \leq j \leq 6 \) has multiplicity 3 since it coincides with \( (\tilde{P}_i, \tilde{C}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}), (\tilde{C}_i, \tilde{P}_j, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) and \( (\tilde{l}_{mn}, \tilde{l}_{kh}, \tilde{l}_{ij}) \) where \( \{m, n\} = \{1, 2, 3\} - \{i\}, \{k, h\} = \{4, 5, 6\} - \{j\} \). Every triple intersection \( (\tilde{l}_{ij}, \tilde{l}_{km}, \tilde{l}_{nh}) \) for \( \{i, m, n\} = \{1, 2, 3\}, \{j, k, h\} = \{4, 5, 6\} \) has multiplicity 1. So \( X_x \) has 17 distinct triple intersections. The 17 triple intersections with their multiplicities correspond to the partition \( (6^2, 3^9, 1^6) \) of 45.

Moreover, we see that the singular point is a star point of \( X \), since it is contained in all lines of the triple intersections \( (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_3) \). We will prove in the next section that it is a proper star point.

\( \mathcal{A}_1, \mathcal{A}_2 \) Let \( x \in \mathcal{A}_1, \mathcal{A}_2 \). The corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^6 \) where \( c(\mathcal{P}) = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + P_4 + P_5 + 2P_6 \) such that \( P_i \) and \( 2P_5 \) are contained in a line \( l_1 \); three points \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) are contained in another line \( l_2 \); the intersection point of \( l_1 \) and \( l_2 \) does not belong to \( \mathcal{P} \) (see Figure 3.4, (a)).

View \( X \) as a point in the closure of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \). Consider \( \mathcal{P} \) as a specialization
position of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the double point $2P_5$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_5$ and $P_6$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. By (3.3.14), we see that the image of $(l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is the $A_2$ singularity; the line $\bar{l}_5$ is of multiplicity 6 and is the line containing 2 singularities; the lines $\bar{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 4$ contain the $A_2$ singularity and they are of multiplicity 3. Moreover, we see that the lines $\bar{l}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ are of multiplicity 2. So they contain the $A_1$ singularity. The other lines of $X_x$ are $\bar{l}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ which are of multiplicity 1. The 11 lines of $X_x$ with their multiplicities correspond to the partition $(6^1, 3^4, 2^3, 1^3)$ of 27.

As in the case of $A_2$, we see that the triple intersections $(\bar{P}_1, \bar{P}_2, \bar{P}_3)$ and $(2\bar{P}_5, \bar{P}_i)$ are of multiplicity 6; every triple intersection $(\bar{P}_i, \bar{P}_j, \bar{l}_k)$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ has multiplicity 3. Every triple intersection $(\bar{P}_5, \bar{l}_i, \bar{l}_j)$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ has multiplicity 6 since it coincides with $(\bar{P}_5, \bar{C}_i, \bar{l}_j)$, $(\bar{C}_i, \bar{P}_5, \bar{l}_j)$, $(\bar{l}_i, \bar{k}, \bar{l}_j)$, $(\bar{P}_5, \bar{C}_i, \bar{l}_j)$, $(\bar{C}_i, \bar{P}_5, \bar{l}_j)$ and $(\bar{l}_i, \bar{k}, \bar{l}_j)$ for $k, h = \{1, 2, 3\} - \{i\}$. Finally, every triple $(\bar{l}_i, \bar{l}_j, \bar{l}_k)$ for $\{i, j, k\} = \{1, 2, 3\}$ has multiplicity 2 since it coincides with $(\bar{l}_i, \bar{l}_j, \bar{l}_k)$ and $(\bar{l}_5, \bar{l}_6, \bar{l}_7)$. So $X$ has 11 distinct triple intersections. With multiplicities, the triple intersections of $X_x$ correspond to the partition $(6^6, 3^3, 2^3)$ of 45.

The $A_2$ singularity is a star point of $X_x$, since it is the intersection of all lines of the triple intersection $(2\bar{P}_5, \bar{P}_i)$.

**Remark 3.3.19.** If we consider the above 6-point scheme, it is not clear how to obtain the $A_1$ singularity. Consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{125}$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_5$. Let $Q = \varphi(\mathcal{P})$ be the image of $\mathcal{P}$. We see that $c(Q) = 2Q_5 + Q_1 + Q_2 + Q_4 + Q_6$, where $Q_1, Q_2, Q_6$ lie on the line $d_1$; three points $Q_4, Q_5, Q_6$ lie on another line $d_2$ (see Figure 3.4, (b)). The surface of $Q$ is isomorphic to $X_x$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_Q$. In this case, the image of $l_1 - \{Q_1, Q_2, Q_6\}$ is the $A_1$ singularity; the image of $l_2 - \{Q_1, Q_5, Q_6\}$ is the $A_2$ singularity; the line $Q_6$ is the line containing two singularities.

3.4. Let $x \in 3.4$. The corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^6$ where $\mathcal{P} = 2P_1 + 2P_2 + P_3 + P_4$ and $\mathcal{P}$ is contained in an irreducible conic curve $C$ (see Figure 3.5, (a)).

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^1 - \Delta$. Consider $\mathcal{P}$ as a specialization position of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the double point $2P_1$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_1$ and $P_5$, the double point $2P_2$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_2$ and $P_4$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. As in the case of 3.4, we see that the image of $C - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is a point $S_1$, which is an $A_1$ singularity; the lines $\bar{P}_1$ and $\bar{P}_2$ are of multiplicity 4; the lines $\bar{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 4$ contain the singular point $S_1$ (3.3.14).

Moreover, the line $\bar{l}_{12}$ also has multiplicity 4 since the linear subspaces $S_{12}, S_{16}, S_{25}$ and $S_{56}$ are the same. There exist 3 star points on $X_x$ determined by triple
intersections \((2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}), (2\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{26})\) and \((2\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34})\). We see that \(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2\) and \(\tilde{l}_{12}\) are three lines connecting 3 singular points of \(X_x\). The six lines \(\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{P}_4, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{23}\) and \(\tilde{l}_{24}\) have multiplicity 2 and each of them contains exactly one singular point. Namely, the lines \(\tilde{P}_3\) and \(\tilde{P}_4\) contain \(S_1 := \tilde{P}_1 \cap \tilde{l}_{12}\); the lines \(\tilde{l}_{13}\) and \(\tilde{l}_{14}\) contain \(S_2 := \tilde{P}_1 \cap \tilde{l}_{12}\); the lines \(\tilde{l}_{23}\) and \(\tilde{l}_{24}\) contain \(S_3 := \tilde{P}_2 \cap \tilde{l}_{12}\). The 12 lines of \(X\) with multiplicities correspond to the partition \((4^3, 2^6, 1^3)\) of 27.

As in the case of \(2\mathcal{A}_1\), the triple intersections \((2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}), (2\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{26}), (2\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34})\) have multiplicity 2. The triple intersection \((\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{P}_3)\) has multiplicity 4 since it coincides with \((\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{C}_3), (\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{l}_{35}, \tilde{C}_3), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{P}_3)\) and \((\tilde{C}_5, \tilde{l}_{35}, \tilde{P}_3)\). Similarly, the triple intersections \((\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{P}_4), (\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{P}_3), (\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{24}, \tilde{P}_4), (\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{24})\) and \((\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{14})\) have multiplicity 4. The triple intersection \((\tilde{l}_{15}, \tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{24})\) has multiplicity 2 since it coincides with \((\tilde{l}_{15}, \tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{16})\) and \((\tilde{l}_{15}, \tilde{l}_{36}, \tilde{l}_{24})\). Similarly, the triple intersections \((\tilde{l}_{26}, \tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{14})\) and \((\tilde{l}_{34}, \tilde{P}_5, \tilde{P}_6)\) have multiplicity 2. The triple intersection \((\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{12})\) has multiplicity 8 since it coincides with

\[
(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}),
\]

\[
(\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{P}_5, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_5, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{25})\text{ and } (\tilde{C}_5, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{56}).
\]

The multiplicity of the triple \((\tilde{l}_{15}, \tilde{l}_{26}, \tilde{l}_{34})\) is 1. So the surface \(X\) has 14 distinct triple intersections, which correspond to the partition \((8^1, 4^6, 2^6, 1^1)\).

**Remark 3.3.20.**

(i) The surface \(X_x\) above has three star points, which correspond to the triple intersections \((2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{13}), (2\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{26})\) and \((2\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34})\). In the next section, we prove that they are proper star points.

(ii) As in the case of \(2\mathcal{A}_1\), when considering \(X_x\) as the csurface of a 6-point scheme \(\mathcal{P}\) as above, it is not clear how to obtain the singular points \(S_2\) and \(S_3\). Consider the quadratic transformation \(\varphi_{123}\) with respect to \(P_1, P_2, P_3\). Let \(Q = \varphi(\mathcal{P})\) is the image of \(\mathcal{P}\). Then we see that \(c(Q) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} Q_i\) where 3 points \(Q_2, Q_3, Q_5\) lie on a line \(d_1\); three points \(Q_1, Q_3, Q_6\) lie on
another line $d_2$; three points $Q_1, Q_3, Q_6$ lie on the third line $d_3$ (see Figure 3.5, (b)). We know that the csurface of $Q$ is isomorphic to $X_x$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_Q$. The three singular points of the csurface of $Q$ are the images of $d_1 - \{Q_2, Q_3, Q_5\}, d_2 - \{Q_1, Q_3, Q_6\}$ and $d_3 - \{Q_4, Q_5, Q_6\}$.

**4A_1** Let $x \in 4A_1$. The corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in H^0$ where $c(\mathcal{P}) = 2P_1 + 2P_2 + 2P_3$ and $\mathcal{P}$ is contained in an irreducible conic $C$ (see Figure 3.6, (a)).

![Diagram](image)

**Figure 3.6:** 6-point schemes corresponding to elements in 4A_1

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. Consider $\mathcal{P}$ as a specialization position of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the double point $2P_1$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_1$ and $P_4$, the double point $2P_2$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_2$ and $P_5$, and the double point $2P_3$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_3$ and $P_6$.

Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_\mathcal{P}$. As in the case of 3A_1, by (3.3.14), the image of $C - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is a point $\tilde{S}_1$, which is an $A_1$ singularity; the lines $\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2$ and $\tilde{P}_3$ have multiplicity 4 and contain $\tilde{S}_1$. We see that the linear subspaces $S_{12}, S_{13}, S_{24}$ and $S_{45}$ are the same. This implies that the multiplicity of $\tilde{l}_{12}$ is 4. Similarly, the lines $\tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{23}$ are of multiplicity 4. The lines $\tilde{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ and $\tilde{l}_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 3$ form a tetrahedron whose vertices are 4 singular points of $X_x$. Other lines of $X_x$ are $\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{25}$ and $\tilde{l}_{36}$ which are of multiplicity 1. The 9 lines of $X_x$ with multiplicities correspond to the partition $(4^6, 1^3)$ of 27.

As in the case of 3A_1, every triple intersection formed by three $A_1$ singularities is of multiplicity 8. There exist 6 triple intersections which are of the forms $(2d, l)$ where $d$ is one of the 6 lines of multiplicity 4 and $l$ is one of three lines $\{\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{25}, \tilde{l}_{36}\}$. Each of these 6 triple intersections has multiplicity 2. Finally, the triple intersection $(\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{25}, \tilde{l}_{36})$ has multiplicity 1. So the surface $X$ has 11 distinct triple intersections corresponding to the partition $(8^4, 2^3, 1^1)$ of 45.
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

Remark 3.3.21.

(i) We see that $X_x$ has 6 triple intersections of the form $(2d, l)$, so $X_x$ has at least 6 star points. We see in the next section that these points are proper star points.

(ii) To see how 4 singular points of $X_x$ are obtained, we consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{123}$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_3$. The image $\varphi_{123}(\mathcal{P})$ consists of 6 distinct points which form a quadrilateral in $\mathbb{P}^2$ (see Figure 3.6, (b)). The csurface of $\varphi_{123}(\mathcal{P})$ is isomorphic to $X_x$. The 4 edges of the quadrilateral correspond to 4 singular points.

$2A_1A_2$. Let $x \in 2A_1A_2$. The corresponding surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^0$ where $c(\mathcal{P}) = 2P_1 + 2P_2 + P_3 + P_4$ such that $2P_1, P_3$ are contained in a line $l_1$; the points $2P_2, P_4$ are contained in another line $l_2$; the intersection point of $l_1$ and $l_2$ does not belong to $\mathcal{P}$ (see Figure 3.7 (a)).

![Diagram](image.png)

Figure 3.7: 6-point schemes corresponding to elements in $2A_1A_2$

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. Consider $\mathcal{P}$ as a specialization position of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the double point $2P_1$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_1$ and $P_5$, and the double point $2P_2$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_2$ and $P_6$.

Consider any rational morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_x$. As in the case of $A_1A_2$, by (3.3.14), we see that the image of $(l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(\mathcal{P})$ is the $A_2$ singularity; each of the lines $P_1$ and $P_2$ has multiplicity 6 and contains the $A_2$ singularity and one of $A_1$ singularities; the lines $P_3$ and $P_4$ are of multiplicity 3; the lines $P_1, P_2, P_3$ and $P_4$ contain the $A_2$ singularity. The line $l_{12}$ has multiplicity 4 since the linear subspaces $S_{12}, S_{16}, S_{25}$ and $S_{56}$ are the same. This implies that the line $l_{12}$ contains two $A_1$ singularities. The lines $l_{14}, l_{23}$ have multiplicity 2. The lines $P_1, l_{12}$ and $l_{14}$ contain one $A_1$ singularity. The lines $P_2, l_{12}$ and $l_{23}$ contain another $A_1$ singularity. The line $l_{34}$ has multiplicity 1. The 8 lines of $X_x$ with multiplicities correspond to the partition $(6^2, 4^1, 3^2, 2^2, 1^1)$ of 27.

The triple intersection $(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_{12})$ is of multiplicity 12 since it coincides with

\[
(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{l}_{35}, \tilde{l}_{46}, \tilde{l}_{12}), (\tilde{P}_5, \tilde{C}_2, \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{C}_5, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{l}_{25}), (\tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{46}, \tilde{l}_{25}), \\
(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{l}_{35}, \tilde{l}_{24}, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{P}_5, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{C}_5, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{56}), (\tilde{l}_{13}, \tilde{l}_{24}, \tilde{l}_{56}).
\]
As in the case of $2\mathcal{A}_1$, the triple intersection $(\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{23})$ has multiplicity 4 since it coincides with $(\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{45}, \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{l}_{16}, \tilde{l}_{15}, \tilde{l}_{23}), (\tilde{l}_{25}, \tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{l}_{56}, \tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{23})$; the triple intersection $(2\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34})$ has multiplicity 2.

As in the case of $\mathcal{A}_1\mathcal{A}_2$, the triple intersections $(2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_3), (2\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_3), (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_3, \tilde{l}_{14})$ and $(\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_3, \tilde{l}_{23})$ are of multiplicity 6; the triple intersection $(\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{P}_4, \tilde{l}_{34})$ has multiplicity 3. So $X$ has 8 distinct triple intersections, which correspond to the partition $(12^1, 6^4, 4^1, 3^1, 2^1)$ of 45.

**Remark 3.3.22.**

(i) The surface $X_x$ above has at least 2 star points. One of them is the $A_2$ singularity. Another is determined by the triple intersection $(2\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34})$. In the next section, we prove that they are proper star points.

(ii) Consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{123}$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_3$ as in the case of $\mathcal{A}_1\mathcal{A}_2$. Let $Q = \varphi_{123}(P)$. Then we see that $c(Q) = 2Q_2 + Q_1 + Q_3 + Q_4 + Q_6$, where the direction $d$ at the double point 2$Q_2$ contains $Q_5$; the three points $Q_1, Q_3$ and $Q_6$ are contained in a line $l_1$; the three points $Q_2, Q_4$ and $Q_6$ are contained in another line $l_2$. The csurface of $Q$ is isomorphic to $X_x$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_Q$. The images of $l_1 - \{Q_1, Q_3, Q_6\}$ and $d - \{Q_2, Q_3\}$ are two $A_1$ singularities; the image of $l_2 - \{Q_2, Q_4, Q_6\}$ is the $A_2$ singularity (see Figure 3.7 (b)).

$\mathcal{A}_2$ Let $x \in 2\mathcal{A}_2$. The corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $P \in \mathcal{H}^0$ where $c(P) = P_1 + P_2 + P_3 + 3P_4$ such that 3 point $P_1, P_2, P_3$ lie on a line $l_1$ and $3P_4$ is contained in another line $l_2$; the intersection point of $l_1$ and $l_2$ does not belong to $P$ (see Figure 3.8, (a)).

\[\begin{array}{cccc}
\tilde{P}_1 & \tilde{P}_2 & \tilde{P}_3 \\
\varphi_{124} & & \\
Q_1 & Q_2 & Q_3 & Q_4
\end{array}\]

(a) (b)

**Figure 3.8:** 6-point schemes corresponding to elements in $2\mathcal{A}_2$

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$. Consider $P$ as a specialization position of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the triple point $3P_4$ is contained in the three sections corresponding to the points $P_4, P_5$ and $P_6$.

Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$. As in the case of $\mathcal{A}_1\mathcal{A}_2$, by (3.3.14), we see that the image of $(l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(P)$
is a point $S_1$, which is an $A_2$ singularity; the line $\tilde{P}_4$ is of multiplicity 9 and contains two singularities; the lines $\tilde{P}_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ are of multiplicity 3 and contain $S_1$. We see that the lines $\tilde{l}_4$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ are of multiplicity 3 since the linear subspaces $S_{44}, S_{45}$ and $S_{46}$ are the same. These lines contain another $A_2$ singularity. The 7 lines of $X_x$ with multiplicities correspond to the partition $(9^1, 3^3)$ of 27.

As in the case of $A_1A_2$, the triples $(3\tilde{P}_4)$ and $(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_3)$ are of multiplicity 6. Similarly, the triple $(\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{24}, \tilde{l}_{34})$ has multiplicity 6. The triple intersection $(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_4, \tilde{l}_{14})$ is of multiplicity 9 since it coincides with

\begin{align*}
(\tilde{P}_1\tilde{C}_4\tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_4\tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{P}_1\tilde{C}_5\tilde{l}_{15}), (\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_5\tilde{l}_{15}), (\tilde{P}_1\tilde{C}_6\tilde{l}_{16}), \\
(\tilde{C}_1\tilde{P}_6\tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{56}\tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{46}\tilde{l}_{15}) \text{ and } (\tilde{l}_{23}\tilde{l}_{45}\tilde{l}_{16}).
\end{align*}

Similarly, the triple intersections $(\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{24})$ and $(\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{34})$ are of multiplicity 9. So, the surface $X_x$ has 6 distinct triple intersections, which correspond to the partition $(9^3, 6^3)$ of 45.

**Remark 3.3.23.**

(i) The surface $X_x$ above has the triple intersection $(3\tilde{P}_4)$. This implies that $X_x$ has an infinite number of star points. In the next section, we will prove that indeed they are proper star points.

(ii) To see how the second singular point of $X_x$ is obtained, we consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi_{124}$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_4$. Let $Q = \varphi_{124}(P)$. We see that $e(Q) = 2Q_4 + 2Q_5 + Q_1 + Q_2$ such that the direction $d$ at the double point $2Q_5$ contains the point $Q_4$ and three points $Q_1, Q_2, Q_5$ are contained in a line $l$ (see Figure 3.8, (b)). The csurface of $Q$ is isomorphic to $X_x$. The two singular points are the images of $l - \{Q_1, Q_2, Q_5\}$ and $d - \{Q_5, Q_4\}$ by any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_Q$.

$A_1; 2A_2$ Let $x \in A_1; 2A_2$. The corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $P \in \mathcal{H}^0$, where $e(P) = 2P_1 + P_2 + 3P_4$, such that $2P_1$ and $P_2$ are contained in a line $l_1$; the triple point $3P_4$ is contained in another line $l_2$; the intersection point of $l_1$ and $l_2$ does not belong to $P$ (see Figure 3.9, (a)).

The point $x$ belongs to the closure of $\mathbb{P}^10 - \Delta$. Consider $P$ as a specialization of some family of 6-point schemes in general position. Suppose further that the family has 6 sections of points. We may assume that the triple point $3P_4$ is contained in the three sections corresponding to the points $P_4, P_5$ and $P_6$; the double point $2P_1$ is contained in the two sections corresponding to the points $P_1$ and $P_2$.

Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_P$. By (3.3.14), we see that the image of $(l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Supp}(P)$ is a point $S_1$, which is an $A_2$ singularity; the line $\tilde{P}_4$ is of multiplicity 9 and contains two $A_2$ singularities; the line $\tilde{P}_1$ is of multiplicity 6 and it contains $S_1$ and the $A_1$ singularity; the line $\tilde{P}_2$ is of multiplicity 3 and it contains $S_1$. As in the case of $2A_2$, we see that the
Figure 3.9: 6-point schemes corresponding to elements in $\mathcal{A}_12\mathcal{A}_2$

line $\tilde{l}_{24}$ is of multiplicity 3 and contains the another $A_2$ singularity. The surface $X_x$ has exactly 5 lines with the partition $(9^1, 6^2, 3^3)$ of 27.

As in the case of $2\mathcal{A}_2$, the triple intersections $(3\tilde{P}_4)$, $(2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2)$ and $(2\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{24})$ are of multiplicity 6; the triple intersection $(\tilde{P}_2, \tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{24})$ is of multiplicity 9. The triple intersection $(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_1, \tilde{l}_{14})$ is of multiplicity 18 since the following triple intersections are the same:

$(\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_4, \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_4, \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_5, \tilde{l}_{15}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_5, \tilde{l}_{15}), (\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{C}_1, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{16}),$

$(\tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{56}, \tilde{l}_{14}), (\tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{46}, \tilde{l}_{15}), (\tilde{l}_{23}, \tilde{l}_{45}, \tilde{l}_{16}), (\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{C}_4, \tilde{l}_{34}), (\tilde{C}_3, \tilde{P}_4, \tilde{l}_{34}), (\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{C}_5, \tilde{l}_{35}),$

$(\tilde{C}_3, \tilde{P}_5, \tilde{l}_{35}), (\tilde{P}_3, \tilde{C}_6, \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{C}_3, \tilde{P}_6, \tilde{l}_{36}), (\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{56}, \tilde{l}_{34}), (\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{16}, \tilde{l}_{35}), (\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{45}, \tilde{l}_{36}).$

So $X$ has 5 distinct triple intersections corresponding to the partition $(18^1, 9^1, 6^3)$ of 45.

**Remark 3.3.24.**

(i) As in the case of $2\mathcal{A}_2$, since the surface $X_x$ above has the triple $(3\tilde{P}_4)$, all points on the line $\tilde{P}_4$ are star points. Moreover, the triple intersections $(2\tilde{P}_1, \tilde{P}_2)$ and $(2\tilde{l}_{14}, \tilde{l}_{24})$ determine other star points on $X_x$. In the next section, we will prove that they are proper star points.

(ii) It is not clear how other singularities on $X_x$ are obtained by considering the 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ as above. Consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_4$. Let $Q = \varphi(\mathcal{P})$. Then we see that $c(Q) = 2Q_4 + 2Q_5 + Q_1 + Q_2$, where the direction $d_1$ at the double point $2Q_5$ contains $Q_4$; the direction $d_2$ at the double point $Q_4$ contains $Q_5$; the three points $Q_1, Q_2, Q_5$ are contained in a line $l$, (see Figure 3.9, (b)). The surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the surface of $Q$. Consider any morphism from $\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q)$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ determined by a basis of $\mathcal{L}_Q$. It is clear that the image of $d_2 - \{Q_2, Q_4\}$ is the $A_1$ singularity; the images of $l - \{Q_1, Q_2, Q_3\}$ and $d_1 - \{Q_4, Q_5\}$ are the $A_2$ singularities.

**3A2** Let $x \in 3A_2$. We know that the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P} \in \mathcal{H}^0$ where $c(\mathcal{P}) = 3P_1 + 3P_2$ such that
3.3. The csurfaces of 6-point schemes in almost general position

3P₁ and 3P₂ are contained in 2 different lines d₁, d₂ respectively; the intersection point of d₁ and d₂ does not belong to P (see Figure 3.10, (a)).

![Diagram](image)

**(a)**

Figure 3.10: 6-point schemes corresponding to points in 3A₂

Consider any morphism from \(\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)\) to \(\mathbb{P}^3\) determined by a basis of \(L_P\). By (3.3.14), we see that the image of \((l_1 \cup l_2) - \text{Sup}(P)\) is a point \(S_1\), which is an \(A_2\) singularity; the lines \(P_1\) and \(P_2\) are of multiplicity 9 and contain \(S_1\). Moreover, as in the case of \(A_1 2A_2\), the line \(l_{12}\) is of multiplicity 9. The 3 lines of X together with multiplicities correspond to the partition \((9^3)\) of 27. These 3 lines form a triangle where 3 vertices are three \(A_2\) singularities. The surface X has 4 distinct triple intersections, namely \((3P_1), (3P_2), (3l_{12})\) and \((P_1, P_2, l_{12})\). The latter is of multiplicity 27. Each of the first three triples is of multiplicity 6. So the 4 triple intersections of X with multiplicities correspond to the partition \((27^1, 6^3)\) of 45.

**Remark 3.3.25.**

(i) All points on lines \(P_1, P_2\) and \(l_{12}\) are star points of \(X_2\). Moreover, we will prove in the next section that they are proper star points.

(ii) The same question as before arises: how to see other singular points of \(X_2\) from morphisms from \(\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(P)\) to \(\mathbb{P}^3\) defined by bases of \(L_P\)? We can not apply any quadratic transformation as before since \(P\) does not contain 3 distinct points. Going back to the cases of \(2A_2\) and \(A_1 2A_2\), a “conjecture” appears naturally: is the csurface of 6-point scheme \(Q\) with a configuration as in Figure 3.10, (b) isomorphic to the surface \(X_2\)? The 6-point scheme \(Q\) defines a cycle \(c(Q) = 2Q_1 + 2Q_2 + 2Q_3\), where the direction at \(2Q_1\) contains \(Q_2\), the direction at \(Q_2\) contains \(Q_3\) and the direction at \(Q_3\) contains \(Q_1\).

We prove that the conjecture is true. Choose coordinates such that \(Q_1 = (1 : 0 : 0), Q_2 = (0 : 1 : 0)\) and \(Q_3 = (0 : 0 : 1)\). The linear space \(L_Q\) parameterizes all cubic forms

\[
f = a_1 x_0^2 x_1 + a_2 x_1^2 x_2 + a_3 x_2^2 x_0 + a_4 x_0 x_1 x_2 \in k[x_0, x_1, x_2].
\]

Choose the basis \(\{x_0^2 x_1, x_1^2 x_2, x_0 x_1 x_2, x_2^2 x_0\}\) of \(L_P\). Consider the morphism:

\[
\mathbb{P}^2 - \text{Supp}(Q) \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^3
\]

\[
(x_0 : x_1 : x_2) \mapsto (x_0^2 x_1 : x_1^2 x_2 : x_0 x_1 x_2 : x_2^2 x_0),
\]
determined by the basis.
Let \( F = x_3 x_0 x_1 - x_2^2 \). We have
\[
F(x_0^2 x_1, x_1^2 x_2, x_0 x_1 x_2, x_2^2 x_0) = (x_2^2 x_0)(x_0^2 x_1)(x_1^2 x_2) - (x_0 x_1 x_2)^3
= x_0^2 x_1^2 x_2^2 - x_0^3 x_1^3 x_2^3
= 0.
\]

Since \( F \) is irreducible, the csurface of \( Q \) is defined by \( F \). This means that the csurface of \( Q \) is of type \( 3A_2 \) and therefore is isomorphic to the surface \( X_x \).

We end this section with Table 3.1 containing the information about the number of lines, the number of triple intersections on semi-stable cubic surfaces.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Num.</th>
<th>( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta )</th>
<th>( A_1 )</th>
<th>( 2A_1 )</th>
<th>( A_2 )</th>
<th>( 3A_1 )</th>
<th>( A_1A_2 )</th>
<th>( 3A_1A_2 )</th>
<th>( 4A_1 )</th>
<th>( 2A_1A_2 )</th>
<th>( 2A_2 )</th>
<th>( A_12A_2 )</th>
<th>( 3A_2 )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lines</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triple Int.</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star points</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>( \infty )</td>
<td>( \infty )</td>
<td>( \infty )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.1: Information about lines, triple intersections and star points on semi-stable cubic surfaces; note that the star points mentioned in the table are star points which the corresponding surface of every element point at least has.

For each class \( iA_1jA_2 \) for \( 2i + 3j \leq 9, i \leq 4 \) and \( (i, j) \neq (3, 1) \), we compute the number of star points, which the corresponding surface of every element of the class at least has; this number of star points is realized on a dense open subset in that class. As we have seen, every of these star points is either an \( A_2 \) singularity or any point on a line containing two \( A_2 \) singularities or the specific point on a line containing two \( A_1 \) singularities.

### 3.4 On the boundaries of the moduli spaces of non-singular cubic surfaces with star points

Let \( \phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \rightarrow \overline{M} \) be the quotient space with respect to the natural action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). We know from Section 3.2 that \( \overline{M} \) is projective. Let \( M := \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta) \), where \( \Delta \) is the locus of singular cubic surfaces in \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). Then \( M \) can be viewed as the coarse moduli space of the non-singular cubic surfaces. The space \( \overline{M} \) is a compactification of \( M \). Let \( N := \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \).

In this section, we study the boundaries of the subsets \( H_i^{(k)} \) inside the set of semi-stable cubic surfaces (see Chapter 2 for the definition of \( H_i^{(k)} \)); we also study the boundaries of moduli spaces \( \phi(H_i^{(k)}) \) inside \( \overline{M} \).

Let \( (\Delta)^{ss} = (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \cap \Delta \). We denote by \( \Delta H_i^{(k)} \) the intersection of the closure of \( H_i^{(k)} \) with \( (\Delta)^{ss} \), which is called the boundary of \( H_i^{(k)} \) in \( (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \). Denote \( iA_1jA_2 \) for the closure of \( iA_1jA_2 \) in \( (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \) for \( 2i + 3j \leq 9, i \leq 4 \) and \( (i, j) \neq (3, 1) \).
3.4. On the boundaries of the moduli spaces...

A. Some basic facts

Lemma 3.4.1. The subsets $iA_1jA_2$ are irreducible in $\mathbb{P}^{19}$.

Proof. Consider the case $i > 0$. Each $x \in iA_1jA_2$ for $i > 1$ is given by a polynomial

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$; the rank of $f_2$ is 3 and $V_{2^i}(f_2, f_3)$ corresponds to a partition $(2^{i-1}3^j1^k)$ with $2(i - 1) + 3j + k = 6$.

By choosing coordinates, we can assume that $f_2 = x_1^2 - x_0x_2$ and

$$f_3 = a_0x_0^3 + a_1x_0^2x_1 + a_2x_0x_1^2 + a_3x_1^3 + a_4x_1^2x_2 + a_5x_1x_2^2 + a_6x_2^3,$$

see [B-W], p. 248.

The points of $V_{2^i}(f_2, f_3)$ are determined by the solutions of the equation:

$$f_3(\theta^2, \theta\psi, \psi^3) := a_0\theta^6 + a_1\theta^5\psi + a_2\theta^4\psi^3 + a_3\theta^3\psi^3 + a_4\theta^2\psi + a_5\theta\psi^3 + a_6\psi^6 = 0.$$

We prove that the set of all homogeneous polynomials of degree 6 in 2 variables which possess solutions corresponding to a given partition of 6 is irreducible.

Let $T$ be the projective space parameterizing all homogeneous polynomials of degree 6 in two variables. Let $a$ be the partition $(2^{i-1}3^j1^k)$ of 6. Let $T_a$ be the subset of $T$ consisting of all homogeneous polynomials of degree 6 in 2 variables which possess solutions corresponding to the partition $a$. Consider the morphism:

$$(\mathbb{P}^1)^{i+j+k-1} \rightarrow T$$

$$(a_1 : b_1^i : \ldots : a_{i+j+k-1} : b_{i+j+k-1}) \mapsto F,$$

where

$$F = \prod_{t=1}^{i-1}(b_t\psi - a_t\theta)^2 \prod_{r=1}^{i+j-1}(b_r\psi - a_r\theta)^3 \prod_{s=i+j}^{i+j+k-1}(b_s\psi - a_s\theta).$$

The image of $(\mathbb{P}^1)^{i+j+k-1} - \Delta_1$ is $T_a$, where $\Delta_1$ is the diagonal of $(\mathbb{P}^1)^{i+j+k-1}$. So $T_a$ is irreducible. This implies that the subset $K_{ij}$ of $iA_1jA_2$ consisting of points which are given by

$$F = x_3(x_1^2 - x_0x_2) + a_0x_0^3 + a_1x_0^2x_1 + a_2x_0x_1^2 + a_3x_1^3 + a_4x_1^2x_2 + a_5x_1x_2^2 + a_6x_2^3,$$

is irreducible. Consider $\varphi : \text{PGL}(3) \times K_{ij} \rightarrow \mathbb{P}^{19}$ which is induced from the natural action of PGL(3) on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$. The subset $iA_1jA_2$ is the image of $\varphi$, so it is irreducible.

Consider the case $i = 0$. An element in $jA_2$ for $j = 1, 2, 3$ can be determined by a polynomial

$$F = x_3f_2(x_0, x_1, x_2) + f_3(x_0, x_1, x_2),$$

where $f_i$ for $i = 1, 2$ is a homogeneous polynomial of degree $i$; the rank of $f_2$ is 2; the singular point of $V_{2^i}(f_2)$ is not contained in $V_{2^i}(f_3)$; the points of $V_{2^i}(f_2, f_3)$ correspond to a partition $(3^{j-1}1^k)$ with $3(j - 1) + k = 6$.

By choosing coordinates, we can assume that $f_2 = x_0x_1$ and

$$f_3 = x_0(3x_0^2 + a_1x_0x_2 + a_2x_2^2) + x_1(a_3x_1^2 + a_4x_1x_2 + a_5x_2^2) + x_2^3; \quad (3.6)$$

see [B-W], p. 249. Let $N_0$ be the set of all cubic forms in type (3.6).
\textbf{j=1.} Let \( N_1 \) be the subset of \( N_0 \) such that \( V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(x_0x_1, f_3) \) consists of 6 distinct points. Consider the morphism:

\[
A^6 \xrightarrow{\pi} N_0 \quad \quad (a_0, \ldots, a_5) \mapsto f_3,
\]

where \( f_3 \) is a cubic form in type (3.6). We see that the image of the set

\[
B_1 = \{(a_0, \ldots, a_5) \in A^6 \mid a_1^2 - 4a_0a_2 \neq 0, a_1^2 - 4a_3a_5 \neq 0 \}
\]

is the set \( N_1 \). So \( N_1 \) is irreducible. By the same argument as in the case of \( i > 0 \), we see that \( A_2 \) is irreducible.

\textbf{j=2.} We can choose coordinates such that \( V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(x_0x_1, f_3) \) has a triple point at \((1:0:0)\). This means that in type (3.6), we have \( a_0 = a_1 = a_2 = 0 \). Let \( N_2 \) be the subset of all cubic forms in type (3.6), such that \( a_0 = a_1 = a_2 = 0 \) and \( a_1^2 - 4a_3a_5 \neq 0 \). Then \( N_2 \) is the image via \( \pi \) of the set

\[
B_2 = \{(a_0, \ldots, a_5) \in A^6 \mid a_0 = a_1 = a_2 = 0, a_1^2 - 4a_3a_5 \neq 0 \},
\]

which is an open subset of \( A^3 \subset A^6 \). So \( N_2 \) is irreducible. With the same argument as in the case of \( i > 0 \), we see that \( 2A_2 \) is irreducible.

\textbf{j=3.} We can choose coordinates such that two triple points of \( V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(x_0x_1, f_3) \) are \((1:0:0)\) and \((0:1:0)\). This means that in type (3.6), we have \( a_i = 0 \) for all \( 0 \leq i \leq 5 \). Let \( N_3 \) be the one-point set consisting of the point determined by \( F = x_3x_0x_1 + x_3^2 \). The set \( 3A_2 \) is the image of the morphism \( \text{PGL}(3) \times N_3 \to \mathbb{P}^{19} \) which is induced from the natural action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). So it is irreducible.

Recall that \( \overline{M} := \text{PGL}(3)\backslash(\mathbb{P}^{19})^s \) and \( N := \text{PGL}(3)\backslash(\mathbb{P}^{19})^s \).

\textbf{Proposition 3.4.2.} Let \( x, y \in (\mathbb{P}^{19})^s \) such that the corresponding cubic surfaces contain at least one \( A_2 \) singularity. Let \( \phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^s \to \overline{M} \) be the quotient space with respect to the natural action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). Then \( \phi(x) = \phi(y) \). Consequently the set \( \overline{M} - N \) consists of the singleton \( s \), which is the image of all non-stable points.

\textbf{Proof.} First of all, we note that, by choosing coordinates, any \( z \in 3A_2 \) can be given by a polynomial \( F = x_3x_0x_1 + x_3^2 \). This means that \( \phi(3A_2) \) consists of one point. We denote this point by \( s \). Let \( x \in (\mathbb{P}^{19})^s \) such that the corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) contains at least one \( A_2 \) singularity. Let \( \mathcal{O}(x) \) be the orbit of \( x \) with respect to the action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). Our task is now to prove that \( \mathcal{O}(x) \) contains at least one element of \( 3A_2 \), then by (3.2.5, (iii)), we have \( \phi(x) = s \).

Since \( X_x \) contains one \( A_2 \) singularity, the surface can be given by a polynomial

\[
F = x_3x_0x_1 + x_0(a_0x_0^2 + a_1x_0x_2 + a_2x_2^2) + x_1(a_3x_1^2 + a_4x_1x_2 + a_5x_2^2) + x_2^3,
\]

see [B-W], p. 249. Consider the subset \( T \) of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) consisting of elements \( A_{(a,b)} \) given by:

\[
A_{(a,b)} = \begin{pmatrix}
0 & b & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & b & 0 \\
0 & 0 & a & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1/b^2
\end{pmatrix}
\]
where \( a, b \in k^* \). Let \( \varphi : \text{PGL}(3) \times \mathbb{P}^{19} \to \mathbb{P}^{19} \) be the natural action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). The set \( T(x) := \varphi(T \times \{ x \}) \) consists of elements in \( \mathcal{O}(x) \) given by

\[
F_{(a,b)} = x_3x_0x_1 + bx_0(b^2a_0x_0^2 + aba_1x_0x_2 + a^2a_2x_2^2) + bx_1(b^2a_3x_1^2 + aba_4x_1x_2 + a^2a_5x_2^2) + a^3x_2^3.
\]

Then \( \overline{\mathcal{O}(x)} \) contains the point \( x_0 \) given by

\[
F_{(a,0)} = x_3x_0x_1 + a^3x_2^3.
\]

It is clear that \( x_0 \in 3\mathcal{A}_2 \).

\[ \square \]

B. On the boundaries

B.1. On the boundary of \( H_1 \)

Recall that \( H_1 \) is the subvariety of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) parameterizing all cubic surfaces with at least one star point.

**Proposition 3.4.3.** The subset \( 2\mathcal{A}_1 \) is contained in the closure of \( H_1 \). Consequently the star point on the line with multiplicity 4 of any cubic surface parametrized by a point of \( 2\mathcal{A}_1 \) is a proper star point.

**Proof.** Let \( x \in 2\mathcal{A}_1 \). We know from the previous section that the corresponding cubic surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the surface of a 6-point scheme \( Q = \sum_{i=1}^{6} Q_i \) where 3 points \( Q_2, Q_3, Q_6 \) lie on a line \( l_1 \); three points \( Q_4, Q_5, Q_6 \) lie on another line \( l_2 \); no 3 of the five points \( Q_1, \ldots, Q_5 \) are collinear (see the Figure 3.11).

\[ \text{Figure 3.11: 6-point schemes giving points in } 2\mathcal{A}_1 \]

Let \( P_t \) be a moving point on the line \( d = \overline{Q_1Q_6} \). At a general position of \( P_t \) on \( d \), the 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P}_t = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \) where \( P_i = Q_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq 5 \) and \( P_6 = P_t \) gives

\[ \text{The proof is completed using a suggestion from Prof. Dr. E. Looijenga. I would like to thank him very much.} \]

\[ 1 \]
a non-singular cubic surface with at least one star point. Except for a finite number
of positions, when \( P_i \) moves on the line \( d \), we have a family in \( H_1 \). This implies that
\( x \) lies on the closure of \( H_1 \). Moreover, we see that the section of star point over the
family is defined by the tritangent plane \( H_i = (l_{23}, l_{45}, l_{16}) \) where \( l_{ij} \) is the line on the
cusface of a 6-point scheme in the family determined by the linear subspace \( S_{ij} \). In the
specialization position, the linear subspaces \( S_{23}, S_{45}, S_{C_1} \) and \( S_{Q_6} \) coincide. This means that
\( Q_6 \) is the line connecting the 2 singular points and the section of tritangents \( H_i \)
contains the triple \( (2Q_1, l_{16}) \). So the section of star points contains the star point on
the line \( Q_6 \) with multiplicity 4.

\[ \square \]

**Corollary 3.4.4.** The closure of \( 2A_1 \) in \( (\mathbb{P}^1)^6 \) is an irreducible component of \( \Delta H_1 \).

**Proposition 3.4.5.** Any \( x \in A_2 \) lies on the closure of \( H_1 \). Consequently, the \( A_2 \)
singularity of \( X_x \), as a star point, is a proper star point.

**Proof.** Let \( Q \) be a 6-point scheme where \( c(Q) = 2Q_1 + \sum_{i=2}^{5} Q_i \), such that three points
\( Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 \) are contained in a line \( l \); the direction at double point \( 2Q_1 \) does not contain
any \( Q_4 \) for \( i = 4, 5 \); the four points \( Q_1, Q_2, Q_4, Q_5 \) as well as 4 points \( Q_1, Q_3, Q_4, Q_5 \) are in general position (see Figure 3.12, (a)). Consider the quadratic transformation
with respect to \( Q_1, Q_4, Q_5 \). Then the image of \( Q \) is a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) consisting of 6
distinct points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) such that 3 points \( P_1, P_2, P_3 \) as well as 3 points \( P_4, P_5, P_6 \) are
collinear. We know that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface with exactly
one \( A_2 \) singularity (see Figure 3.12, (b)).

\[ \text{Figure 3.12: 6-point schemes giving points in } A_2 \]

Let \( x \in A_2 \). The surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( Q \)
where \( c(Q) = 2Q_1 + \sum_{i=2}^{5} Q_i \) described as above (see Figure 3.12 (a)).

Let \( O \) be the intersection point of \( l \) and \( Q_4Q_5 \). Let \( d \) be the direction at the double
point \( 2Q_1 \). Let \( m \) be a fixed line which contains \( Q_3 \) and does not contain any other
point of \( \text{Supp}(Q) \). Let \( (P_6, P_3) \) be a pair of moving points such that \( P_6 \in d \) and \( P_3 \in m \)
such that \( P_6P_3 \) contains \( O \). It is clear that, except for a finite number of positions,
when moving \( (P_6, P_3) \), the csurfaces of 6-point schemes \( \mathcal{P} = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \), where \( P_i = Q_i \)
for \( i \in \{1, 2, 4, 5\} \), are isomorphic to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least one star
point. This defines a family in \( H_1 \). When \( (P_6, P_3) = (Q_1, Q_3) \), we arrive at the 6-point
scheme \( Q \) whose csurface is isomorphic to \( X_x \). So \( x \) lies on the closure of \( H_1 \). Moreover, the star section over the family is defined by the tritangent planes \( (\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{45}, \tilde{l}_{36}) \), where the line \( \tilde{l}_{ij} \) on a surface of the family is determined by the linear subspace \( S_{ij} \). In the specialization position, the linear subspaces \( S_{12}, S_{26} \) and \( S_{Q_2} \) coincide; the linear subspaces \( S_{36}, S_{13} \) and \( S_{Q_2} \) coincide. Note that the 6 lines \( \tilde{Q}_1, \tilde{Q}_2, \tilde{Q}_3, \tilde{l}_{45}, \tilde{l}_{56}, \tilde{l}_{14} \) and \( \tilde{l}_{19} \) have multiplicity 3 and they contain the \( A_2 \) singularity. It is clear that the section of star point gives a specialization to the intersection of \( \tilde{Q}_2, \tilde{Q}_3 \) and \( \tilde{l}_{45} \), which is the \( A_2 \) singularity point.

**Corollary 3.4.6.** The closure of \( A_2 \) in \((\mathbb{P}^1)^{ss}\) is an irreducible component of \( \Delta H_1 \).

Consider the set \( K_1 \) consisting of all 6-point schemes \( \mathcal{P} \) where \( c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \) such that \( \mathcal{P} \) is contained in an irreducible conic and \( l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{O\} \) (see Figure 3.13).

![Figure 3.13: 6-point schemes of \( K_1 \)](image)

Let \( D_1 \) be the subset of \( \mathbb{P}^1 \) consisting of all points corresponding to the cubic surfaces, each of them is isomorphic to the csurface of some element in \( K_1 \). It is clear that \( D_1 \subseteq \mathcal{A}_1 \). On the other hand, we see that \( D_1 \) is contained in the closure of \( H_1 \) also. For this, let \( x \in D_1 \). The corresponding surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of some 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \in K \). Let \( c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \). Fix \( P_1, \ldots, P_5 \) and let \( P_6 \) move on the line \( PO \). This defines a family of 6-point schemes whose csurfaces are isomorphic to non-singular cubic surfaces with at least one star point. When \( P_6 \) is contained in the conic defined by \( P_1, \ldots, P_5 \), we get \( \mathcal{P} \). This implies that \( x \) lies on the closure of \( H_1 \). Moreover, we prove that:

**Lemma 3.4.7.** The subset \( D_1 \) is irreducible in \((\mathbb{P}^1)^{ss}\).

**Proof.** Let \( x \in D_1 \). Since \( D_1 \subseteq \mathcal{A}_1 \), by choosing coordinates, we can assume that \( x \) is given by

\[
F = x_3(x_1^2 - x_0 x_2) + f_3, \tag{3.7}
\]

where

\[
f_3 = a_0 x_0^3 + a_1 x_0^2 x_1 + a_2 x_0 x_1^2 + a_3 x_1^3 + a_4 x_2^2 x_1 + a_5 x_1 x_2^2 + a_6 x_2^3,
\]

such that the scheme \( V_{23}(x_1^2 - x_0 x_2, f_3) \) consists of 6 distinct points. Furthermore there exists a numbering of 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) of \( V_{23}(x_1^2 - x_0 x_2, f_3) \) such that \( l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset \) (see Figure 3.13).
The 6 points of $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(x_2^2 - x_0 x_2, f_3)$ are determined by the solutions of the equation
\[ a_0 \theta^6 + a_1 \theta^5 \psi + a_2 \theta^4 \psi^2 + a_3 \theta^2 \psi^3 + a_4 \theta \psi^4 + a_5 \psi^5 + a_6 \psi^6 = 0. \] (3.8)

Let $T$ be the projective space parameterizing all homogeneous polynomials of degree 6 in two variables.

Consider the morphism
\[
\begin{align*}
(\mathbb{P}^1)^6 & \to T \\
(a_1 : b_1; \cdots ; a_6 : b_6) & \mapsto \prod_{i=1}^6 (b_i \theta - a_i \psi).
\end{align*}
\]

Note that a solution $(\theta_i : \psi_i)$ of (3.8) corresponds to a point $P_i = (\theta_i^2 : \theta_i \psi_i : \psi_i^2)$ for $1 \leq i \leq 6$ contained in the conic $V_{\mathbb{P}^2}(x_0^2 - x_0 x_2)$. The set of all elements of $(\mathbb{P}^1)^6 - \Delta$ such that $l_{i2} \cap l_{i3} \cap l_{i6} \neq \emptyset$ is irreducible. This implies that the subset $D_1 \subset \mathbb{P}^{19}$ consisting of all elements which correspond to polynomials of the form (3.7) and satisfy the above condition is irreducible. We see that $D_1$ is the image of the morphism \( \varphi : \text{PGL}(3) \times D_1 \to \mathbb{P}^{19} \) which is induced from the natural action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$. So the set $D_1$ is irreducible.

\textbf{Proposition 3.4.8.} $\Delta H_1 = \overline{D_1 \cup 2A_1 \cup A_2}$.

\textbf{Proof.} It is clear that the sets $\overline{D_1}, \overline{2A_1}$ and $\overline{A_2}$ are irreducible components of $\Delta H_1$. Conversely, let $x$ be the generic point of an irreducible component $W$ of $\Delta H_1$. Suppose that $W \neq \overline{2A_1}$ and $W \neq \overline{A_2}$. Since $\dim W = 17$, we have $x \in A_1$. So the surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^6 P_i$ where 6 distinct points $P_1, \ldots , P_6$ are contained in an irreducible conic. The 21 lines of $X_x$ are $P_i$ and $l_{ij}$ for $1 \leq i < j \leq 6$. Note that the $A_1$ singularity is not a star point. Therefore the star point of $X_x$ is determined by a triple intersection of the form $(l_{ij}, l_{kh}, l_{mn})$. This implies that the 6 points $P_1, \ldots , P_6$ satisfy $l_{ij} \cap l_{kh} \cap l_{mn} \neq \emptyset$. This means that $x \in D_1$ and $W = D_1$.

Recall that $\phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{s} \to \overline{M}$ is the quotient space with respect to the action of $\text{PGL}(3)$ on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$.

\textbf{Corollary 3.4.9.} $\phi(\Delta H_1) = \phi(\overline{D_1}) \cup \phi(\overline{2A_1})$. Moreover, the components $\phi(\overline{D_1})$ and $\phi(\overline{2A_1})$ contain the singleton $s$.

\textbf{Proof.} Note that since $\phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{s} \to \overline{M}$ is a good quotient, the sets $\phi(\overline{D_1})$ and $\phi(\overline{2A_1})$ are closed. The first conclusion follows from the proposition.

Since $\overline{2A_2} \subset \overline{2A_1}$, we have $s \in \phi(\overline{2A_1})$.

Let $\mathcal{P} \in K$. By definition, we have $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^6 P_i$ where 6 points $P_1, \ldots , P_6$ are contained in an irreducible conic and $l_{i2} \cap l_{i3} \cap l_{i6} = \{O\}$. Consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi$ with respect to $P_1, P_3, P_5$; we see that the 6-point scheme $\varphi(\mathcal{P})$ consists of 6 distinct points $Q_1, \ldots , Q_6$ such that $Q_2, Q_4, Q_6$ are collinear and $Q_1Q_2 \cap Q_5Q_4 \cap Q_3Q_6 = \{\varphi(O)\}$ (see Figure 3.14).

Consider a family in $D_1$ given by fixing 5 points $Q_2, \ldots , Q_6$ and moving $Q_1$ on the line $Q_2\varphi(O)$, where $\varphi(O) = Q_3Q_4 \cap Q_5Q_6$. When $Q_1$ coincides with the intersection point of $Q_2\varphi(O)$ and $Q_5Q_6$, we get a 6-point scheme whose csurface is isomorphic to a surface with exactly one $A_2$ singularity. This implies that $s \in \phi(\overline{D_1})$.\qed
Proposition 3.4.10. Let $X$ be a semi-stable cubic surface. Any star point of $X$ is a proper star point.

Proof. Let $P$ be a star point of $X$. The result is clear if $P$ is formed by a triple intersection whose lines are of multiplicity 1. If $P$ is an $A_2$ singularity, then the result follows from (3.4.5). Consider the case $X$ has two $A_1$ singularities. Let $d$ be the line containing two $A_1$ singularities. Let $(2d, l)$ be the triple intersection which factors into $2d$ and another line $l$ on $X$. Suppose that $P = d \cap l$, then the result follows from (3.4.3).

Consider the case that $X$ has at least two $A_2$ singularities and $P$ is a point in the line connecting two $A_2$ singularities. We only consider the case that $P$ is not singular. Choose coordinates such that $X$ is given by the polynomial (see [B-W], p. 249):

$$F_0 = x_3x_0x_1 + x_1(a_1x_1^2 + a_2x_1x_2 + a_3x_2^2) + x_2^3;$$

moreover, if $X$ has another singularity then the point $(0 : 1 : 0)$ is a multiple point of $V_3(x_0, f_3)$ where $f_3 = x_1(a_1x_1^2 + a_2x_1x_2 + a_3x_2^2) + x_2^3$. The surface $X$ contains two $A_2$ singularities, namely $S_1 = (0 : 0 : 1)$ and $S_2 = (1 : 0 : 0)$. The line $d = V(x_1, x_2)$ contains two $A_2$ singularities. Let $P = (\lambda, 0 : 0 : 1) \in d$ where $\lambda \neq 0$.

Consider the family given by

$$F_t = x_3(x_0x_1 + \lambda t x_2^2) + x_1(a_1x_1^2 + a_2x_1x_2 + a_3x_2^2) + x_2^3 - tx_0x_2^2, \quad (3.9)$$

where $t \in k$. Let $f_2^t = x_0x_1 + \lambda t x_2^2$ and $f_3^t = x_1(a_1x_1^2 + a_2x_1x_2 + a_3x_2^2) + x_2^3 - tx_0x_2^2$. For $t \neq 0$, the polynomial $f_2^t$ has rank 3. Consider $\mathcal{P} = V_{p_2}(f_2^t, f_3^t)$. We see that the line $V_{p_2}(x_1)$ is tangent to $V_{p_2}(f_2^t)$ and $V_{p_2}(f_3^t)$ at $(1 : 0 : 0)$. Moreover $(1 : 0 : t) \in V(x_1, f_3^t)$. This implies that the point $(1 : 0 : 0)$ is a double point of $V(f_2^t, f_3^t)$. Other points of $\mathcal{P}$ are determined by $(-\lambda b^2 : 1 : b)$ where $b$ is a solution of the following equation

$$a_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_2^2 + x_2^3 - \lambda t x_4^2 = 0. \quad (3.10)$$

The above equation has a multiple solution for an infinite number of values of $t$ if and only if $(a_1, a_2) = (0, 0)$.

(i) If $X$ defines a point in $2A_2$. This is equivalent to say $a_3^2 - 4a_1a_2 \neq 0$. Except for a finite number of values of $t$, we see that $\mathcal{P}$ has only one double point. This means that (3.9) defines a family $\Gamma_t$ in $2A_1$. Each corresponding cubic surface $X_t$ of any element in $\Gamma_t$ consists of two $A_1$ singularities, namely $S_1 = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1)$ and

![Figure 3.14: 6-point schemes giving points in $D_1$](image-url)
\( S_2 = (1 : 0 : 0 : 1) \). We see that \( H = V(x_1) \cap X_1 = 2d + l_t \), where \( d = V(x_1, x_2) \) and \( l_t = V(x_1, \lambda x_3 + x_2 + tx_0) \). The surface \( X_t \) contains a proper star point \( P_t = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) = d \cap l_t \). When the family \( \Gamma_t \) gives a specialization to \( X_0 \), the sections of \( A_1 \) singularities contain the \( A_2 \) singularities of \( X_0 \). Moreover, the section of proper star points over \( \Gamma_t \) contains \( P = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) \) in \( X_0 \).

(ii) If \( X \) defines a point in \( A_1 \) and \( S_3 = (0 : 1 : 0 : 0) \) is the \( A_1 \) singular point of \( X \). It is equivalent to say \( (a_1, a_2) = (0, 0) \) and \( a_3 \neq 0 \). We see that (3.10) has one double solution at \( x_2 = 0 \) and two other solutions with multiplicity 1 except for a finite number of values of \( t \). This means that (3.9) defines a family \( \Gamma_t \) in \( 3A_1 \).

Each element in \( \Gamma_t \) corresponds to a surface \( X_t \) consisting of three \( A_1 \) singularities, namely \( S_1 = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1) \), \( S_2 = (1 : 0 : 0 : 0) \) and \( S_3 = (0 : 1 : 0 : 0) \). We see that \( H = V(x_1) \cap X_t = 2d + l_t \), where \( d = V(x_1, x_2) \) and \( l_t = V(x_1, \lambda x_3 + x_2 + tx_0) \). The surface \( X_t \) contains a proper star point \( P_t = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) \). When the family \( \Gamma_t \) gives a specialization to \( X_0 \), the sections of \( A_1 \) singularities \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) contain the two \( A_2 \) singularities \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) respectively of \( X_0 \). Moreover, the section of proper star points over \( \Gamma_t \) contains \( P = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) \) in \( X_0 \).

(iii) If \( X \) defines a point in \( 3A_2 \) and the third \( A_2 \) singularity is \( S_3 = (0 : 1 : 0 : 0) \). This means that \( a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 0 \). It is clear that (3.9) defines a family \( \Gamma_t \) in \( 2A_1, A_2 \). Each corresponding surface \( X_t \) of an element in \( \Gamma_t \) contains two \( A_1 \) singularities, namely \( S_1 = (0 : 0 : 0 : 1) \), \( S_2 = (1 : 0 : 0 : 0) \) and one \( A_2 \) singularity at \( S_3 = (0 : 1 : 0 : 0) \). The surface \( X_t \) contains a proper star point \( P_t = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) \). When the family \( \Gamma_t \) gives a specialization to \( X_0 \), the sections of \( A_1 \) singularities \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) contain the two \( A_2 \) singularities \( S_1 \) and \( S_2 \) respectively of \( X_0 \). Moreover, the section of proper star points over \( \Gamma_t \) contains \( P = (\lambda : 0 : 0 : 1) \) in \( X_0 \).

This completes the proof.

\( \square \)

### B.2. On the boundary of \( H_2^{(3)} \)

Recall that \( H_2^{(3)} \) is the subvariety of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) whose corresponding cubic surfaces contain at least one star-Steiner set. The set \( H_2^{(3)} \) generically consists of the points corresponding to non-singular cubic surfaces with exactly 3 star points which are collinear.

**Proposition 3.4.11.** The set \( 3A_1 \) is contained in the closure of \( H_2^{(3)} \). Consequently, the 3 star points on 3 lines of multiplicities 4 of a cubic surface corresponding to any point of \( 3A_1 \) are collinear.

**Proof.** Let \( x \in 3A_1 \). We know from the previous section that the corresponding surface \( X_x \) can be considered as the cusp of some 6-point scheme \( Q \) consisting of 6 distinct points \( Q_1, \ldots, Q_6 \) such that \( Q_1, Q_3, Q_6 \) as well as \( Q_3, Q_5, Q_2 \) and \( Q_4, Q_5, Q_6 \) are collinear; moreover \( Q_i \notin Q_j Q_k \) (see Figure 3.15).

Consider a family of 6-point schemes \( P = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \) where \( P_i = Q_i \) for \( i \in \{2, 3, 4, 6\} \) and \( P_1, P_5 \) move on the line \( Q_1 Q_5 \) such that \( P_1 Q_5 \cap Q_4 P_5 \cap Q_2 Q_6 \neq \emptyset \). Except for a finite number of positions, each position of \( (P_1, P_5) \) gives a 6-point scheme such that its cusp is isomorphic to a cubic surface in \( H_2^{(3)} \), see Chapter 2, Section 2.3. This gives a family in \( H_2^{(3)} \). When \( P_1 = Q_1 \) then \( P_5 = Q_5 \). This implies that \( x \in \Delta H_2^{(3)} \). \( \square \)
3.4. On the boundaries of the moduli spaces...

![Diagram of 6-point schemes giving points in $3A_1$](image)

**Figure 3.15:** 6-point schemes giving points in $3A_1$

**Corollary 3.4.12.** The closure of $3A_1$ in $(\mathbb{P}^3)^{88}$ is an irreducible component of $\Delta H_2^{(3)}$.

**Lemma 3.4.13.** Let $x$ be the generic point of an irreducible component of $\Delta H_2^{(3)}$. Then $x \notin 2A_1$.

**Proof.** Suppose that $x \in 2A_1$. Let $S_1, S_2, S_3$ be the three star points of $X_x$. By choosing coordinates, we can assume that the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme $Q$ such that $c(Q) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} Q_i$ where $Q_6, Q_2, Q_3$ as well as $Q_6, Q_4, Q_5$ are collinear, and no 3 of the five points $Q_1, \ldots, Q_5$ are collinear (see Figure 3.11). The line $\bar{Q}_6$ contains the two singular points and has multiplicity 4. The line $\bar{l}_{16}$ intersects $\bar{Q}_6$ but does not contain any singular point. Note that the 9 lines of 3 star triples of a non-singular cubic surface in $H_2^{(3)}$ are mutually different. Since the line $\bar{l}_{16}$ has multiplicity 1, the line $\bar{l}_{16}$ does not contain any two of $S_1, S_2, S_3$. So there exists a star point formed by a triple intersection $T$ whose lines are different from $\bar{l}_{16}$. From the configuration of lines on $X_x$, we see that the triple intersection $T$ possesses 2 lines, each of them passes through one singular point of $X_x$. A contradiction appears from the fact that an $A_1$ singularity is not a star point. □

**Definition:** Let $K_0$ be the subset of $(\mathbb{P}^2)^4$ consisting of 4-tuple $(P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4)$ such that 4 point $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4$ are in general position. Let

$$K_1 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^5 \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in K_0; P_5 \in l_{12} \cup l_{34}; P_5 \neq P_i, \ \forall i = 1, 2 \right\};$$

$$B_2^{(3)} = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5) \in K_1; \right. \left. l_{16} \cap l_{24} \neq \emptyset; \ l_{14} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset \right\} \quad \text{(see Figure 3.16).}$$

Let $D_2^{(3)}$ be the subset of $\mathbb{P}^{19}$ consisting of all points such that each corresponding cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of one 6-point scheme determined by some 6-tuple in $B_2^{(3)}$. It is easy to see that $D_2^{(3)} \subset A_1$. 

Figure 3.16: 6-point schemes giving points in $D_2^{(3)}$.

**Proposition 3.4.14.** The closure of $D_2^{(3)}$ is an irreducible component of $\Delta H_2^{(3)}$.

**Proof.** First of all, we prove that $D_2^{(3)}$ is irreducible. The set $K_0$ is an open subset of $(\mathbb{P}^2)^4$ so that it is irreducible. Each fiber of the projection $p : K_1 \rightarrow K_0$ is isomorphic to an open set of $\mathbb{P}^1$. This implies that $K_1$ is irreducible. Since $K_1$ is isomorphic to $B_2^{(3)}$, the set $B_2^{(3)}$ is irreducible.

Let

$$L = \left\{ (\mathcal{P}, F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4) \mid \mathcal{P} \in B_2^{(3)}; \quad F_i \text{ for } 1 \leq i \leq 4 \text{ is a cubic form in } \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}} \right\},$$

$$U = \left\{ (\mathcal{P}, F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4) \in L \mid \{F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4\} \text{ is a basis of } \mathcal{L}_{\mathcal{P}} \right\}.$$

Consider the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
U & \xleftarrow{\text{open}} & L \\
\downarrow{g} & & \uparrow{p} \\
B_2^{(3)} & \xrightarrow{\text{closed}} & B_2^{(3)} \times (\mathbb{P}^9)^4
\end{array}
$$

where $p$ is the projection. The map $g$ is surjective and every fiber is isomorphic to $(\mathbb{P}^3)^4$. So $L$ is irreducible. This implies that $U$ is irreducible.

Let $D_1$ be the subset of $B_2^{(3)} \times \mathbb{P}^{19}$ consisting of all pairs $(\mathcal{P}, x)$ where cubic surface corresponding to $x$ is isomorphic to the cusurface of the 6-point scheme determined by $\mathcal{P}$. Given $(\mathcal{P}, F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4) \in U$, the closure of the rational map from $\mathbb{P}^2$ to $\mathbb{P}^3$ defined by the basis $\{F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4\}$ is a cubic surface in $\mathbb{P}^3$. We then have a morphism $\tau : U \rightarrow D_1$ which is surjective. This implies that $D_1$ is irreducible. Consider the projection $D_1 \rightarrow D_2^{(3)}$ which is surjective. Consequently $D_2^{(3)}$ is irreducible.

Let $x \in D_2^{(3)}$. The corresponding surface $X_x$ can be considered as the cusurface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where $(P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in B_2^{(3)}$. Fix $P_1, P_2, P_6, P_4$ and let $P_3, P_5$ move on the lines $l_{23}, l_{56}$, respectively such that $l_{16} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{35} \neq \emptyset$. We obtain a family in $H_2^{(3)}$ such that $x$ is a specialization position. Moreover, we see that
when \( P_5 = P_6 \) then \( P_5 \) moves to the intersection point of \( l_{16} \) and \( l_{23} \). This gives a 6-point scheme whose csurface is isomorphic to a cubic surface with exactly one \( A_2 \) singularity. For this, use a similar quadratic transformation as in Figure 3.20.

Corollary 3.4.15. Let \( \phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \rightarrow \overline{M} \) be the quotient space with respect to the action of \( \text{PGL}(3) \) on \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \). Then \( \phi(\Delta H_2^{(3)}) = \phi(D_2^{(3)}) \cup \phi(3A_1) \). Moreover, the components \( \phi(D_2^{(3)}) \) and \( \phi(3A_1) \) contain the singleton \( s \).

Proof. By the end of the proof of the previous proposition, we see that the boundary of \( D_2^{(3)} \) contains a point of \( A_2 \). So \( s \in \phi(D_2^{(3)}) \). Since \( 3A_2 \subset 3A_1 \), we also have \( s \in \phi(3A_1) \).

Let \( x \) be the generic point of an irreducible component \( W \) of \( \phi(\Delta H_2^{(3)}) \). Suppose that \( W \neq \phi(3A_1) \). By (3.4.13), we see that \( x \in A_1 \). By choosing coordinates, we can assume that the surface \( X_x \) corresponding to \( x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( P \) where \( c(P) = \sum_{i=1}^6 P_i \) such that the 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) are contained in an irreducible conic. Since the singular point of \( X_x \) is not a star point, the 3 star points of \( X_x \) are determined by 3 triple intersections \((l_{ij}, l_{mn}, l_{hh}), (l_{mn}, l_{jk}, l_{nh}) \) and \((l_{mk}, l_{hh}, l_{jkn}) \), where \( \{i,j,m,n,h,k\} = \{1,2,3,4,5,6\} \). This implies that the 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) in \( \mathbb{P}^2 \) satisfy the corresponding conditions, namely \( l_{ij} \cap l_{mn} \cap l_{hh} \neq \emptyset \), \( l_{mn} \cap l_{jk} \cap l_{nh} \neq \emptyset \), and \( l_{mk} \cap l_{hh} \cap l_{jkn} \neq \emptyset \). Consider the quadratic transformation with respect to \( P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5 \) then the image of \( P \) is a 6-point scheme \( Q \) where \( c(Q) = \sum_{i=1}^6 Q_i \) such that 6 points \( Q_1, \ldots, Q_6 \) up to a permutation of 6 letters, form an element of \( B_2^{(3)} \). This implies that \( W = \phi(D_2^{(3)}) \).

\[ \square \]

B.3. On the boundary of \( H_2^{[2]} \)

Recall that \( H_2^{[2]} \) is the subvariety of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) consisting of the points whose cubic surfaces contain (at least) two star triples with one line in common.

Definition: Let

\[
B_2^{[2]} = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_5, O) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5 \text{ are in general position}; \right. \\
\left. l_{24} \cap l_{55} = \{O\}; \text{the conic determined by } P_1, \ldots, P_5 \text{ are tangent to } P_1O \text{ at } P_1 \right\},
\]

see Figure 3.17 (a).

Note that each element in \( B_2^{[2]} \) defines uniquely a 6-point scheme \( P \) such that \( c(P) = 2P_1 + \sum_{i=2}^5 P_i \), where the direction at the double point \( 2P_1 \) is determined by \( P_1O \). Moreover, we know that the csurface of \( P \) has exactly two \( A_1 \) singularities. Let \( D_2^{[2]} \) be the subset of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) consisting of all points such that each corresponding cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of one 6-point scheme determined by some element of \( B_2^{[2]} \). It is easy to see that \( D_2^{[2]} \subset 2A_1 \).

Let

\[
C_2^{[2]} = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \mid P_i \neq P_j \forall i \neq j; l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset; l_{14} \cap l_{23} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset; \right. \\
\left. P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, P_6 \text{ are contained in an irreducible conic} \right\},
\]

see Figure 3.17 (b).
Let $E_2^{(2)}$ be the subset of $\mathbb{P}^9$ consisting of all points such that each corresponding cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of one 6-point scheme determined by some 6-tuple in $C_2^{(2)}$. It is easy to see that $E_2^{(2)} \subset A_1$.

![Diagram](image)

(a)  

(b)  

Figure 3.17: 6-point schemes of $B_2^{(2)}$ and $C_2^{(2)}$ respectively.

**Proposition 3.4.16.** The closures of $D_2^{(2)}$ and $E_2^{(2)}$ are irreducible components of $\Delta H_2^{(2)}$.

**Proof.** Let $\mathbb{P}^5$ be the projective space parameterizing the non-zero quadratic forms in three variables. Let

$$K_0 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^4 \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \text{ are in general position} \right\};$$

$$K_1 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, O, C) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^5 \times \mathbb{P}^5 \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in K_0; O \in l_{24}; O \notin \{P_2, P_4\};
O \notin l_{13}; C \text{ is the conic containing } P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \text{ and tangent to } F_1O \text{ at } P_1 \right\};$$

$$K_2 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, O, C) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \times \mathbb{P}^5 \mid (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, O, C) \in K_1; P_5 \in C \cap \overline{P_3O} \right\}.$$  

It is clear that the set $K_0$ is irreducible. Every fiber of the projection $p_1: K_1 \rightarrow K_0$ is isomorphic to an open set of $\mathbb{P}^1$. This implies that $K_1$ is irreducible. The projections $K_2 \rightarrow K_1$ and $K_2 \rightarrow B_2^{(2)}$ are isomorphisms. Therefore $B_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible.

Similarly, we prove that $C_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible. For this, let

$$K_3 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, P_5, O_1, O_2) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^7 \mid P_1, \ldots, P_5 \text{ are in general position;}
\quad l_{12} \cap l_{34} = \{O_1\}; l_{14} \cap l_{23} = \{O_2\}; P_5 \in \overline{O_1O_2} \right\};$$

$$K_4 = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6, O_1, O_2, C) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^8 \times \mathbb{P}^5 \mid (P_1, \ldots, P_5, O_1, O_2) \in K_3;
C \text{ is the conic determined by } P_1, \ldots, P_5; P_6 \in C \cap \overline{O_1O_2} \right\}.$$
3.4. On the boundaries of the moduli spaces...

Consider the projection $p : K_3 \to K_0$. We see that every fiber is isomorphic to an open set of $\mathbb{P}^1$. So $K_3$ is irreducible. The projections $K_4 \to K_3$ and $K_4 \to C_2^{(2)}$ are isomorphisms. So $C_2^{(2)}$ is irreducible.

By the same argument used in the proof of (3.4.14), we see that $D_2^{(2)}$ and $E_2^{(2)}$ are irreducible.

Suppose $x \in D_2^{(2)}$. The corresponding surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusp surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}_0$ determined by an element $(P_1, \ldots, P_5, O) \in B_2^{(2)}$. Consider a family of $H_2^{(2)}$ given by 6-point schemes $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where $P_6$ is a moving point on the line $\overline{P_1O}$ (see Figure 3.17 (a)). This implies that $x \in \Delta H_2^{(2)}$.

Let $x$ be an element in $E_2^{(2)}$. The cubic surface $X_x$ corresponding to $x$ is isomorphic to the cusp surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}_0$ determined by a 6-tuple $(P_1, \ldots, P_6)$ in $C_2^{(2)}$. Consider a family of $H_2^{(2)}$ given by 6-point schemes $\mathcal{Q}$ such that $c(\mathcal{Q}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} Q_i$ where $Q_i = P_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 5$ and $Q_6$ is a moving point on the line $O_1O_2$ (see Figure 3.17 (b)). This implies that $x \in \Delta H_2^{(2)}$.

**Proposition 3.4.17.** Let $x$ be the generic point of an irreducible component $W$ of $\Delta H_2^{(2)}$. If $x \in A_1$, then $W = E_2^{(2)}$.

*Proof.* By choosing coordinates, we can assume that the surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusp surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ are contained in an irreducible conic. Since the $A_1$ singularity is not a star point, the two star points of $X_x$ are defined by triple intersections $(l_{ij}, l_{mn}, l_{kh})$ and $(l_{ij}, l_{mk}, l_{nk})$ where $\{i, j, m, n, h, k\} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$. This implies that the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ in $\mathbb{P}^2$ satisfy the corresponding conditions, namely $l_{ij} \cap l_{mn} \cap l_{kh} \neq \emptyset$ and $l_{ij} \cap l_{mk} \cap l_{nk} \neq \emptyset$. Up to a permutation of 6 letters, the six points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ define a 6-tuple in $C_2^{(2)}$. This means that $x \in E_2^{(2)}$ and therefore $W = E_2^{(2)}$.

B.4. On the boundary of $H_4^{(6)}$

Recall that $H_4^{(6)}$ be the subvariety of $\mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta$ parameterizing non-singular cubic surfaces, each of them possesses a pair $(S, T)$ where $S$ is a star-Steiner set and $T$ is another star triple with exactly one line in common with $S$.

**Proposition 3.4.18.** The set $4A_1$ is contained in the closure of $H_4^{(6)}$.

*Proof.* Let $x \in 4A_1$. By choosing coordinates, the corresponding surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusp surface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ consisting of 6 distinct points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ such that these points form a complete tetragon (see Figure 3.18, (a)). Consider the quadratic transformation $\varphi$ with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_4$. We see that $\mathcal{Q} = \varphi(\mathcal{P})$ where $c(\mathcal{Q}) = 2Q_1 + 2Q_4 + Q_2 + Q_5$ such that $Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, Q_4$ are in general position and the directions at $Q_1$ and $Q_4$ contain $Q_5$ (see Figure 3.18, (b)).

Therefore the surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusp surface of $\mathcal{Q}$. Let $C$ be the conic containing $Q_1, Q_2, Q_4$ and being tangent to the directions at $Q_1$ and $Q_4$. Consider a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where $P_i = Q_i$ for $i \in \{1, 2, 4, 5\}$, two points $P_3, P_6$ are contained in $C$ and $P_1P_2 \cap P_2P_3 \cap P_3P_6 \neq \emptyset$ (see Figure 3.19).

Let $P_3$ and $P_6$ move on the conic $C$ such that $P_1P_2 \cap P_2P_3 \cap P_3P_6 \neq \emptyset$. It is clear that we have a family of cubic surfaces in $H_4^{(6)}$. When $(P_3, P_6) = (P_1, P_4)$, we get the 6-point scheme $\mathcal{Q}$. This implies that $x \in \Delta H_4^{(6)}$.

□
Figure 3.18: 6-point schemes giving points in $4\mathcal{A}_1$

Figure 3.19: 6-point schemes giving points in $H_4^{(6)}$

**Corollary 3.4.19.** The closure of $4\mathcal{A}_1$ in $(\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss}$ is an irreducible component of $\Delta H_4^{(6)}$.

**Remark 3.4.20.** We know that four $A_1$ singularities on a cubic surface in $4\mathcal{A}_1$ form a tetrahedron. Each edge of the tetrahedron contains one star point. Two star points on opposite edges lie on another line of $X$, which has multiplicity one. So the 6 star points of $X$ lie on a hyperplane generated by the three lines of multiplicity 1.

Recall that $\phi : (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \rightarrow \overline{M}$ be the quotient space with respect to the action of PGL(3) on $\mathbb{P}^{19}$.

**Proposition 3.4.21.** The set $\phi(\Delta H_4^{(6)})$ consists of two points, one is the singleton $s$ and another is the image of $4\mathcal{A}_1$ in $\overline{M}$.

**Proof.** Let $K_4^{(6)}$ be the set consisting of all 6-point schemes $\mathcal{P}$ in general position such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where the conic $C_5$ is tangent to $l_{15}$ and $l_{45}$ at $P_1$ and $P_4$ respectively; the lines $l_{14}$, $l_{25}$ and $l_{36}$ have one point in common (see Figure 3.19).

We know from the previous chapter that the blowing-up of $\mathbb{P}^2$ at $\mathcal{P} \in K_4^{(6)}$ is isomorphic to a non-singular cubic surface in $H_4^{(6)}$. Conversely, for any $x \in H_4^{(6)}$, the corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the csurface of some 6-point scheme in $K_4^{(6)}$. Let $\mathcal{P} \in K_4^{(6)}$. Fix $P_1, P_2, P_4, P_5$ and let $P_3, P_6$ move on the conic $C_5$ such that $P_3P_6$ contains the intersection point of $l_{14}$ and $l_{25}$. Except for two positions determined
when \( \overline{P_5P_6} = l_{25} \) and \( \overline{P_3P_5} = l_{14} \), the 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_6 \) define 6-point schemes in \( K_4^{[6]} \). This defines a surjective morphism from an open set of \( \mathbb{P}^1 \) to \( \phi(H_4^{[6]}) \). This extends to a surjective morphism \( \xi : \mathbb{P}^1 \rightarrow \phi(H_4^{[6]}) \). It is clear that when \( \overline{P_3P_5} = l_{14} \), we get a point \( t_1 \in \mathbb{P}^1 \) such that \( \xi(t_1) = \phi(4C_1) \) (see Figure 3.18, (b)). When \( \overline{P_3P_5} = l_{25} \), we get a point \( t_2 \in \mathbb{P}^1 \). The point \( \xi(t_2) \) corresponds to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P}_0 \) such that \( c(\mathcal{P}_0) = 2P_2 + P_1 + P_4 + P_3 + P_5 + P_6 \) where \( P_2, P_3, P_5 \) are collinear (see Figure 3.20, (a)).

![Figure 3.20: 6-point schemes giving points in \( A_2 \)](image)

We prove that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P}_0 \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface in \( A_2 \). For this, consider the quadratic transformation \( \varphi \) with respect to \( P_1, P_2, P_4 \). We see that \( \mathcal{Q}_0 := \varphi(\mathcal{P}_0) \) consists of 6 distinct points \( Q_1, \ldots, Q_6 \) such that \( Q_1, Q_4, Q_6 \) as well as \( Q_2, Q_3, Q_5 \) are collinear (see Figure 3.20, (b)). As we know, the csurface of \( \mathcal{Q}_0 \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface with exactly one \( A_2 \) singularity.

Since \( H_4^{[6]} \subset H_2^{(2)} \), we have:

**Corollary 3.4.22.** The set \( \phi(\Delta H_2^{(2)}) \) contains the singleton \( s \).

### B.5. On the boundary of \( H_4^{(4)} \)

Recall that \( H_4^{(4)} \) is the subvariety of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} - \Delta \) parameterizing non-singular cubic surfaces, each of them possesses a pair \( (S, T) \) where \( S \) is a star-Steiner set and \( T \) is another star triple with all three lines in common with \( S \).

Recall that \( N = \text{PGL}(3) \setminus (\mathbb{P}^{19})^9 \). We know that \( \overline{M} = N \cup \{ s \} \). Let

\[
B_4^{(4)} = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6, O_1) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \text{ are in general position}; \quad l_{12} \cap l_{34} = \{ O_1 \}; P_5 \in l_{13} \cap l_{24}; P_6 \in l_{23} \cap \overline{P_5O_1} \right\},
\]

see Figure 3.21 (a). Note that each element in \( B_4^{(4)} \) defines uniquely a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) such that \( c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=2}^{6} P_i \). Moreover, we know that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface with exactly three \( A_1 \) singularities. Let \( B_4^{(4)} \) be the subset of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) consisting of all points such that each corresponding cubic surface is isomorphic to the
csurface of one 6-point scheme determined by some element in \( B^4_4 \). It is easy to see that \( D^4_4 \subset \mathcal{A}_1 \).

Let \( C^4_4 = \left\{ (P_1, \ldots, P_6, O_1, O_2) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^6 \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \text{ are in general position} ; l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} = \{ O_1 \}; l_{13} \cap l_{24} \cap l_{56} = \{ O_2 \}; l_{12} \cap l_{36} \cap l_{45} \neq \emptyset ; P_5 \in l_{23} \right\} \), see Figure 3.21 (b). Each element in \( C^4_4 \) defines uniquely a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) such that \( c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i \). Moreover, we know that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface with exactly one \( A_1 \) singularity. Let \( E^4_4 \) be the subset of \( \mathbb{P}^{19} \) consisting of all points such that each corresponding cubic surface is isomorphic to the csurface of one 6-point scheme determined by some element in \( C^4_4 \). It is easy to see that \( E^4_4 \subset \mathcal{A}_1 \).

**Proposition 3.4.23.** The closures of \( D^4_4 \) and \( E^4_4 \) in \( (\mathbb{P}^{19})^{ss} \) are irreducible components of \( \Delta H^4_4 \).

**Proof.** Let \( K_0 = \left\{ (P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4) \in (\mathbb{P}^2)^4 \mid P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \text{ are in general position} \right\} \). Consider the projection \( p : B^4_4 \rightarrow K_0 \). We see that \( p \) is an isomorphism. So \( B^4_4 \) is irreducible. Similarly the projection \( C^4_4 \rightarrow K_0 \) is an isomorphism. So the set \( C^4_4 \) is irreducible. By the same argument used in the proof of (3.4.14), we see that \( D^4_4 \) and \( E^4_4 \) are irreducible.

Let \( x \in D^4_4 \). By definition, the surface \( X_x \) is isomorphic to the csurface of a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) determined by an element \( (P_1, \ldots, P_6, O_1) \) of \( B^4_4 \). Fix 4 points \( P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 \). Let \( l_{13} \cap l_{24} = \{ O_2 \} \). Let \( P_5^t, P_6^t \) move on the line \( \overline{O_1O_2} \) such that \( l_{45} \cap l_{36} \cap l_{12} \neq \emptyset \). Except for a finite number of positions of \( (P_5^t, P_6^t) \), the 6 points \( P_1, \ldots, P_4, P_5^t, P_6^t \) form a 6-point scheme \( \mathcal{P} \) such that the csurface of \( \mathcal{P} \) is isomorphic to a cubic surface in \( H^4_4 \).

We obtain a family in \( H^4_4 \). It is clear that \( x \) is a specialization position of this family.

Similarly, if \( x \in E^4_4 \), we consider a family defined as above. The point \( x \) is a specialization position which is determined when \( l_{23} \cap \overline{O_1O_2} = \{ P_5 \} \). \( \square \)
Corollary 3.4.24. The set $\phi(\Delta H^{(4)}_4) \cap N$ consists of two points which are the image of $D^{(4)}_4$ and $E^{(4)}_4$.

Proof. Since $\dim H^{(4)}_4 = 16$ and the sets $D^{(4)}_4, E^{(4)}_4$ are irreducible, the image of $D^{(4)}_4$ as well as $E^{(4)}_4$ is one point in $\overline{M}$. Let $x \in H^{(4)}_4$. Suppose that $x$ is stable. It is sufficient to prove that $x \in D^{(4)}_4$ or $x \in E^{(4)}_4$. The corresponding cubic surface $X_x$ contains 4 star points $S_1, \ldots, S_4$. Note that there exist 3 star points in $\{S_1, \ldots, S_4\}$ corresponding to a star-Steiner set. Therefore, we can apply the same argument as in (3.4.13) to show that $x \notin 2A_1$.

Suppose that $x \in A_1$. We can assume that the surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ are contained in an irreducible conic. Since the $A_1$ singularity is not a star point, the 4 star points of $X_x$ are determined by star triples $S_1 = (l_{ij}, l_{kn}, l_{nh}), S_2 = (l_{ji}, l_{mn}, l_{jk}), S_3 = (l_{jn}, l_{im}, l_{kh})$ and $T = (l_{ij}, l_{im}, l_{kh})$. Note that the triple $T$ has 3 lines in common with 3 triples $S_1, S_2, S_3$. This implies that the points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ satisfy the corresponding conditions, namely $l_{ij} \cap l_{kn} \cap l_{nh} \neq \emptyset$, $l_{ji} \cap l_{mn} \cap l_{jk} \neq \emptyset$, $l_{jn} \cap l_{im} \cap l_{kh} \neq \emptyset$ and $l_{ij} \cap l_{mn} \cap l_{kh} \neq \emptyset$. Consider the quadratic transformation with respect to $P_1, P_2, P_3$ then we see that the image of $\mathcal{P}$ is a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{Q}$ such that $c(\mathcal{Q}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} Q_i$ where the 6 points $Q_1, \ldots, Q_6$, up to a permutation of 6 letters, form an element of $G^{(4)}_4$. This implies that $x \in E^{(4)}_4$.

If $x \in 3A_1$. We can assume that the surface $X_x$ is isomorphic to the cusface of a 6-point scheme $\mathcal{P}$ such that $c(\mathcal{P}) = \sum_{i=1}^{6} P_i$ where $P_1, P_3, P_5$ are collinear, the points $P_2, P_4, P_6$ are collinear and $P_6 \notin \overline{P_1P_2}$ (see Figure 3.21 (a)). Let $S_1, S_2, S_3$ be the three star triples of $X_x$ which correspond to 3 star triples in a star-Steiner set. Let $T$ be another star triple of $X_x$ which has 3 lines in common with $S_1, S_2, S_3$. The surface $X_x$ has 3 lines of multiplicity 3. They are $P_2, P_3$ and $P_5$. The surface $X_x$ has 3 star points formed by triples $T_1 = (2P_2, \tilde{l}_{12}), T_2 = (2P_3, \tilde{l}_{34})$ and $T_3 = (2P_5, \tilde{l}_{56})$. Suppose that $T$ is one of these three star triples, say $T = (2P_2, \tilde{l}_{12})$. Since $T$ has 3 lines in common with star triples $S_1, S_2, S_3$, we see that $P_2$ is contained in another star triple. It is impossible since any $A_1$ singularity is not a star point. This means that $T \notin \{T_1, T_2, T_3\}$. There exists a unique triple in $X_x$ which is different from $T_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq 3$ and able to form a star point, namely $(\tilde{l}_{12}, \tilde{l}_{34}, \tilde{l}_{56})$. This implies that the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ satisfy $l_{12} \cap l_{34} \cap l_{56} \neq \emptyset$. This means that the 6 points $P_1, \ldots, P_6$ define an element in $B^{(4)}_4$. Therefore $x \in E^{(4)}_4$. \qed
Bibliography


Samenvatting

Een niet-singulier kubisch oppervlak bevat 27 lijnen. Dit is een klassiek onderwerp in de wiskunde. De configuratie van deze 27 lijnen is een fascinerende structuur. F. E. Eckardt onderzocht in 1876 niet-singuliere kubische oppervlakken waar drie lijnen op het oppervlak door één punt gaan; een dergelijk punt noemen we een *sterpunkt* op een kubisch oppervlak (het wordt ook wel een *Eckardt punt* genoemd).

Een kubisch oppervlak wordt gegeven als nulpuntenverzameling van een homogeë polynoom in 4 variabelen van graad 3. Een dergelijke veelterm heeft 20 coëfficienten. Zo zien we dat $\mathbb{P}^9$ een parametrizatie geeft van de verzameling van alle kubische oppervlakken. In Hoofdstuk 2 bestuderen we voor elk natuurlijk getal $k$ de deelvarieté $H_k$ van $\mathbb{P}^9$ die gedefinieerd wordt als de verzameling van alle niet-singuliere kubische oppervlakken met tenminste $k$ sterpunten. De stratificatie verkregen door de $H_k$ wordt beschreven.

Een kubisch oppervlak kan worden verkregen door het opblazen van 6 punten in een projectief vlak. De configuratie van de 27 lijnen op dat oppervlak kan eenvoudig en elegant worden afgelezen uit eigenschappen van de configuratie van die 6 punten. Het hele proefschrift wordt gedacht vanuit de structuur van 6-punt schema's in $\mathbb{P}^2$ en het daardoor gedefinieerde kubische oppervlak.

Vervolgens bestuderen we in het derde hoofdstuk van dit proefschrift singuliere kubische oppervlakken, moduli-ruimten daarvan, de configuratie van lijnen op een kubisch oppervlak, en de "multipliciteit" van een lijn op een (singulier) kubisch oppervlak. Hierdoor krijgen we inzicht in eigenschappen van de rand van de $H_k$ in een compactificatie, van multipliciteiten van drie-raakvlakken aan semi-stabiele kubische oppervlakken en de relatie daarvan met corresponderende 6-punt schema's.
Curriculum Vitae


From 1970 to 1975: going to primary school in Da Nang city.

From 1979 to 1986: going to primary school and secondary school in Quang Nam province, Vietnam.

From 1986 to 1990: study in the Department of Mathematics, Hue University of Education, Vietnam.

From 1990 to 1993: Assistant Lecturer at Hue University of Education.

From 1993: Lecturer at Hue University of Education.


From 1996 to present: Ph. D. research in Utrecht University, The Netherlands.


Lieu and Tu have a 4-year old son named Lam Oort Nguyen in honour of Tu’s Ph.D. Supervisor.